

# Rhododendrons

# International

*The Online Journal of the World's Rhododendron Organizations*



Vireyas



Rhododendrons



Azaleas

# Contents

ii From the Editor, GLEN JAMIESON

## **Introduction**

1 CHAPTER 1. The Rhododendron Research Network: Promoting and Enhancing *Rhododendron* Research through Interdisciplinary Collaboration and Public Engagement JULIANA S. MEDEIROS AND ERIK T NILSEN

## **Physiology**

8 CHAPTER 2. A mechanistic Understanding of Winter Hardiness in *Rhododendron*: Implications in Breeding for Cold Hardiness RAJEEV ARORA

## **Physiological Ecology**

27 CHAPTER 3. Mini-review of *Rhododendron* Ecophysiology ERIK T NILSEN

43 CHAPTER 4. Altitudinal Trends of Efficiency and Stability of Water Transport in the Stems and Leaves of Nepalese *Rhododendron* Species, Based on Morphological Traits HARUHIKO TANEDA AND SUICHI NOSHIRO

## **Evolutionary Ecology**

66 CHAPTER 5. The Unique Value of Genus *Rhododendron* for Investigating the Evolutionary Ecology of Root-microbe Interactions JULIANA S MEDEIROS, YU LIU AND JEAN H BURNS

## **Genetics and Evolution**

82 CHAPTER 6. Floral Morphology of *Rhododendron* and its Relation with Pollinators EAPSA BERRY AND R GEETA

98 CHAPTER 7. A Look at Hybrid Zones in *Rhododendron*, with particular Reference to F1-Dominated Hybrid Zones (F1DZs) RICHARD I MILNE

## **Horticulture**

118 CHAPTER 8. Where Senses and Science Converge STEVE KREBS

## **Ecology & Ethnobotany**

126 CHAPTER 9. Monitoring Rhododendron Flowering Times in a Changing Climate ROBBIE HART AND SAILESH RANJITKAR

## **Medicinal Chemistry**

141 CHAPTER 10. *Rhododendron* Natural Products as Sources of Novel Antibiotics NIKOLAI KUHNERT, INAMULLAH HAKEEM SAID, ABHINANDAN SHRESTHA, AHMED REZK, ANNE GRIMBS, JENNIFER NOLZEN, HARTWIG SCHEPKER, KLAUDIA BRIX, DIRK ALBACH AND MATTHIAS ULLRICH

## **JOURNAL CONTACTS**

**Journal Editor:** Glen Jamieson, Ph.D.

**Issue Layout:** Sonja Nelson

**Journal Technical Reviewers:** Gillian Brown, Steve Hootman, Hartwig Schepker, Barbara Stump, Juliana Medeiros

Comments on any aspect of this journal and future articles for consideration should be submitted in digital form to:

Dr. Glen Jamieson

rhodojournal@gmail.com

Please put "Rhododendrons International" in the subject line.

# From the Editor

**Dr. Glen Jamieson  
Parksville, BC  
Canada**



*Rhododendrons International (RI)* is an online journal distributed free to all the world's known rhododendron associations for their internal distribution. It can also be accessed without charge on the American Rhododendron Society website at <https://www.rhododendron.org/ri-index.htm>. This third volume of *RI* contains the first series of research articles from the Rhododendron Research Network (R-RN), which is a collaboration between the American Rhododendron Society (ARS) and an international group of rhododendron researchers. More detail about the objectives of this network and what is contained in this volume are given in the introductory chapter by the network's co-chairs.

This network is an exciting collaboration between the ARS and the world's rhododendron researchers, and we hope that other rhododendron societies will also actively engage in this initiative by widely sharing this volume with botanists in their own countries and encouraging them to also become participants. I look forward in the future to receiving more dedicated research articles and producing another RI volume to further this endeavour.

## **Section Introduction**

### **Chapter 1**

---

# **The Rhododendron Research Network: Promoting and Enhancing *Rhododendron* Research through Interdisciplinary Collaboration and Public Engagement**

**Juliana S. Medeiros**

**Co-Chair Rhododendron Research Network**

**Erik T. Nilsen**

**Co-Chair Rhododendron Research Network**



J. Medeiros



E. Nilsen

On behalf of the members of the Rhododendron Research Network, we welcome you to this research edition of *Rhododendrons International*. The Rhododendron Research Network (R-RN) is a collaboration between the American Rhododendron Society (ARS) and an international group of other rhododendron researchers seeking to: 1) promote *Rhododendron* as a study system in biology, 2) promote the ARS, associated botanical gardens and rhododendron societies as a resource for *Rhododendron* research and public engagement, 3) foster participation and membership of scientists in the American Rhododendron Society, and 4) create opportunities for communication and collaboration within the international community of researchers who study *Rhododendron*, and between those scientists and non-scientist ARS members.

As our first steps in pursuit of these goals, we established a website ([RhodoResearch.net](http://RhodoResearch.net)) as a central point of communication for all network activities, and we solicited articles from researchers working on *Rhododendron* to be published here in *Rhododendrons International*. We hope that this issue will benefit researchers by expanding their breadth of knowledge, and by sparking inspiration for interdisciplinary studies. In addition, we aspire to make cutting-edge research accessible for use and enjoyment by *Rhododendron* enthusiasts and public garden practitioners.

### **What is a model study system, and why is it important for innovation?**

The model study system concept rose in popularity over the 20<sup>th</sup> century as the volume and complexity of scientific knowledge began to dramatically increase. There are over 200,000 plant species on earth, and for all of them, many factors intermingle to determine their growth and survival, and how they interact with each other. Model systems identify a focus group with broad appeal, one which can provide general insight about important biological processes, and in which many scientists are working together to make advances.

*Arabidopsis thaliana* [Mouseear cress, a member of the mustard (*Brassicaceae*) family, which includes cultivated species such as cabbage and radish], the most famous plant study system, is an annual herbaceous plant. It is easy to grow, small in stature, has a short life cycle, and it can be genetically manipulated. Within this system, important advances have been made in understanding the genetics of plant growth regulation, photosynthesis and phenology (the timing of life events like blooming). As vital as *Arabidopsis* has been in advancing research in plant physiology and genetics, the narrow ecological range of the genus, specialized annual life cycle, and relatively low phenotypic diversity among species in the genus, limit the ability to draw insight into ecological and evolutionary processes that drive plant biodiversity. In addition, *Arabidopsis* itself has no economic significance outside of the role it plays in research. This is important, in part, because it slows the direct application of findings in *Arabidopsis*, but also because this obscurity restricts its usefulness in engaging public audiences as consumers of scientific information.

The importance of scientific public engagement for modern research programs cannot be understated. As the technological complexity of our society increases, the public needs to be informed about scientific advances, and the first thing people want to know is: how does this directly affect my life? In support of this, funding agencies that are sustained by public funds (e.g., United States of America National Science Foundation) are increasing efforts to vet proposals from this perspective, such that the ability to offer public engagement is fast becoming a central factor in the awarding of research funding. Thus, public interest should be considered as an important facet of

study system development, but this aspect has rarely been satisfied in current biological study systems.

For these reasons, new study systems are needed which address tenacious questions that cannot be robustly applied to existing systems like *Arabidopsis*, and which have the charisma to engage public audiences more fully as stakeholders in science.

### **Why promote *Rhododendron* as a study system?**

*Rhododendron* is one of the most speciose and diverse genera of plants on earth, with over a 1000 species, inhabiting environments from the Arctic to the tropics, ranging in size from small alpine shrubs to tropical epiphytes, to large trees, and being both deciduous and evergreen. As a result, this genus represents a rich study system for addressing a wide range of questions in functional biology. *Rhododendron* has also played an important role in human culture. The book *A Brocade Pillow* by Ito Ihei (1692; republished as Ito and Creech (1984)) initiated the long history of horticultural research interest in this genus, going back over 325 years, and substantiates ongoing research in both realized and potential human use of *Rhododendron*. Therefore, *Rhododendron* both meets the need for a new study system that can address difficult questions in organismal biology and provides the required charisma and citizen science mass to engage the public in science. As described in Volume 1 of *Rhododendrons International*, there are 16 world rhododendron organizations, collectively with upwards of 5000 members, spread from northern Europe to North America, to New Zealand and Australia, and to India, China and Japan.

Below, we summarize the areas of research covered in this edition of *Rhododendrons International*, which represent some of the topics where research on *Rhododendron* has already provided unique insight. Importantly, the works presented here speak to the interplay of basic and applied approaches, and to the importance of interdisciplinary studies. We have the potential to push the boundaries of plant biology and drive scientific innovations by combining approaches in physiology, ecology, evolutionary biology, ethnobotany and genetics with this woody plant. Moreover, we can address modern problems faced by humankind if our research includes aesthetic, medicinal and cultural relevance.

### **Research in Functional Biology:**

As briefly mentioned above, the 1000+ species in genus *Rhododendron* are broadly distributed across both latitude and elevation in the montane regions of the northern hemisphere, from the Arctic to the tropics. Arctic and alpine species tend to be short and scrubby survivors, while species of temperate habitats can reach the size of large trees, and epiphytes are an important growth form in tropical habitats where competition and

biodiversity are extensive. Within these climates, rhododendron species play a variety of ecological roles. Some species dominate their native floras, others are members of declining endangered populations, and still others are known to be aggressively invasive when introduced into new areas.

Two important aspects of *Rhododendron* diversity are the wide range of physiological cold hardiness across species, and their high diversity in leaf form. This has attracted researchers interested in temperature stress physiology. In this issue, Arora (Chapter 2) summarizes a substantial body of research focused on the physiological mechanisms by which evergreen leaves withstand freezing, as well as the genetic mechanisms of frost survival. Another important avenue of physiological investigation in *Rhododendron* has been defining how temperature interacts with drought to impact water transport, and how this in turn determines leaf function. In Chapter 3, Nilsen shows that inherently low water transport capacity in the wood of all *Rhododendron* sets up unique physiological challenges for their leaves. This chapter also highlights a fascinating array of discoveries concerning the water-saving solutions found across different species and climates.

By examining *Rhododendron* growing at different altitudes in Nepal, Taneda and Noshiro (Chapter 4) demonstrate that species must navigate a physiological trade-off between growing fast and being stress resistant, and they do so by altering many traits simultaneously, such as by adjusting growth form, leaf size, and the water transport properties of wood and leaves. Variation in the relationships between plant physiology and ecological conditions has far-reaching consequences, as small-scale patterns of growth and survival directly influence large-scale population dynamics, providing the raw material for evolution by natural selection.

In addition to elucidating variation in physiological responses, determining which traits represent functional adaptations also requires understanding the underlying causes of that variation, and determining whether or not traits have relevance for fitness. In pursuit of this, many studies have focused on the substantial leaf diversity in *Rhododendron*. In this regard, species of *Rhododendron* have often been thought to be quite similar morphologically and physiologically below ground, based on their shared propensity to thrive in acidic, low-productivity soils. In Chapter 5, however, Medeiros *et al.* provide compelling evidence for extensive morphological diversity in *Rhododendron* roots, which coincides with an extraordinary diversity in the types of their associated soil microbes. This suggests that roots and soil microbes are important components in the evolution of diversity within the genus. Another important relationship, that between plants and their pollinators, is emphasized by Berry and Geeta (Chapter 6), who focus their observations on the fascinating diversity of *Rhododendron* floral morphology, showing both prevalent and rare floral forms, and that particular forms

are associated with particular pollinators, e.g., butterflies, birds or bees. Still, one of the most confounding factors in understanding *Rhododendron* evolution is likely to be their strong propensity for hybridization. Milne (Chapter 7) describes the puzzling cases where wild rhododendrons occupy distinct zones populated only by first-generation hybrids, outlines the improbability and potential causes of this phenomenon, and discusses how study of these F<sub>1</sub> hybrid zones can provide unique insight into ecological and evolutionary processes.

### **Research in Plant-Human Interactions:**

The importance of *Rhododendron* to humans is affirmed by the fact that botanical gardens and plant societies like the ARS boast a long history of supporting research on the genus, and consequently these organizations harbor a wealth of knowledge and resources. Many young scientists today are seeking to engage the public on some level, but have little familiarity with public organizations like the ARS, probably due to historically insular attitudes and training practices within the scientific culture itself. Chapters 2-7, described above, highlight efforts to understand fundamental problems in *Rhododendron* biology and ecology that are relevant for breeders, shining a light on the important interplay between basic and applied research. In Chapter 8, Krebs outlines extensive ARS activities in support of research, and the strong benefits to scientists in incorporating citizen science into research programs through working with organizations like ARS. As another example of how important this plant genus is to humans, native *Rhododendron* features are known to influence cultural patterns and decisions. For example, in Chapter 9, Hart and Ranjitkar provide a fascinating account from the Hengduan Mountains of China, where the sequential flowering of native *Rhododendron* species has served for many generations as a colorful and reliable calendar to track the timing of important events in daily life, such as the planting of buckwheat. Their work also demonstrates that climate warming is altering these patterns, and suggests that the seasonal timing of flowering (phenology) for some species could become mismatched with the timing of relevant climate conditions for growth and/or pollination. These changes will clearly have consequences for *Rhododendron* population dynamics, but they may also impact humans, particularly if important species become endangered or extirpated as a result.

The risk of losing species, and the full value of *Rhododendron* as an interdisciplinary study system, becomes particularly prescient when considering their potential in medicine. Perhaps as an extension of their physiological and ecological diversity, *Rhododendron* produce a wide variety of secondary chemicals, which are critical in plant responses to stresses such as drought, herbivory, or pathogen attacks. Though these chemicals are often toxic to humans, Hart and Rajitkar (Chapter 9) highlight

diverse ethnobotanical uses of *Rhododendron*, and Khunert *et al.* (Chapter 10) show the great potential of secondary chemicals from *Rhododendron* species as a source of new antibiotics. Khunert *et al.* also note that the possible applications of chemicals derived from *Rhododendron* are only beginning to be explored, bringing us back to the need for continued and concerted efforts to better understand *Rhododendron* ecology and by default, chemistry.

### **Looking to the future with the Rhododendron Research Network**

The fascinating research described here bridges genetics, ecology, and evolutionary biology, and offers great promise in solving many complex problems in functional biology. At the same time, *Rhododendron* consumers and enthusiasts stand to benefit greatly from the application of these findings to problems they care about, such as the development of new and improved plants for home landscapes, conserving *Rhododendron* species in the wild, and the discovering of new medicines.

But what frontiers await? Investigations into all of these research areas will be greatly enhanced in coming years by improved genetic tools. For example, separate efforts to fully sequence reference genomes of *Rhododendron* are now coming to fruition in the United States and China. Few woody plant genomes are available for study, so *Rhododendron* is now poised to become a preeminent study system in genetics as well. Because of their high diversity in physiological traits and climate, comparative studies among species in *Rhododendron* have the potential to provide pivotal insight into the genetics of stress tolerance/resistance, an area of particular relevance for climate change, but not particularly amenable for study in *Arabidopsis*. Beyond this, genetic manipulations (e.g., gene knockouts and gene over-expressers) in *Rhododendron* would improve our understanding of how putative stress tolerance/resistance genes influence physiological functions.

The underlying ecological and taxonomic diversity of *Rhododendron*, when combined with an understanding of their genetics, will open up many applications. In addition, the long history of human fascination with *Rhododendron* is evidence of their overarching importance to human culture and society, a value that cannot be understated in the current scientific climate. But how do we make the most of this exciting and dynamic study system? Our Rhododendron Research Network is designed to jump start advances in *Rhododendron* by facilitating interactions, breaking down barriers, and bringing both scientists and gardeners with diverse backgrounds together in the spirit of interdisciplinary science. We hope that this *Rhododendrons International* volume will inspire a wide variety of people, researchers and lay persons alike, to get

involved in this initiative. We invite you to visit our Rhododendron Research Network webpage at [www.rhodo-research.net](http://www.rhodo-research.net) to learn more about our network initiatives, and to find out how you can hopefully participate.

## **Reference**

Ito, I., and J.L. Creech. 1984. *A Brocade Pillow: Azaleas of Old Japan*. Weatherhill, New York: 161 pp.

*Juliana S. Medeiros and Erik T. Nilsen, as well as being Co-Chairs of the Rhododendron Research Network, are scientists at the Holden Arboretum, Kirtland, OH, and Virginia Tech, Blacksburg, VA, respectively, and are members of the Great Lakes and Middle Atlantic ARS chapters, respectively.*

## **Section: Physiology**

### **Chapter 2**

---

# **A Mechanistic Understanding of Winter Hardiness in *Rhododendron*: Implications in Breeding for Cold Hardiness**

**Rajeev Arora**  
**Department of Horticulture**  
**Iowa State University**  
**Ames, Iowa**



#### **Introduction**

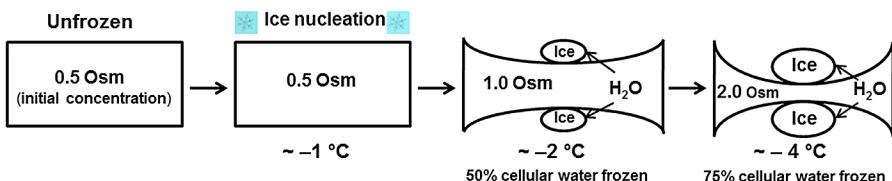
Freezing damages plants by causing both dehydration and mechanical injury to cells. Winter-survival of landscape perennials in temperate and boreal zones involves changes in the various components of winter-hardiness, including: 1) cold acclimation, 2) deacclimation and rehardening, and especially for evergreens, 3) photo-protection. Improvement in the tolerance to freezing of woody plants such as rhododendrons to increase their suitability for culture in colder climates, largely involves classical breeding for specific characteristics. A mechanistic understanding of the components affecting freezing tolerance could improve these breeding efforts.

Additionally, these physiological processes are highly coordinated with climatic cues, and thus may interact with climate change to produce unexpected effects of freezing damage. Our laboratory has conducted physiological and biochemical studies on these components of winter-hardiness with *Rhododendron* species and cultivars. Here, we present a synopsis of some of this research, and conclude with thoughts about some unresolved questions. But first it may be useful, especially for the uninitiated, to briefly review the process of freezing and the resultant stresses experienced by plant cells when exposed to below freezing temperatures.

#### **Freezing and its associated stresses and injury in plants at the cellular level**

During a frost episode, ice typically forms first in the apoplast (i.e., the space lying outside the plasma membrane consisting of intercellular spaces along with the cell wall) of plant tissues, which has a higher temperature freezing point than the cell sap. Upon freezing at any given temperature, the vapor pressure of ice is less than that of a liquid

solution, and this difference increases as temperature decreases (Hansen and Beck 2008). Thus, once extracellular ice forms, water molecules move to regions of lower vapor pressure, i.e., from the protoplasm through the plasma membrane via osmosis, leading to cellular dehydration (Fig. 1). The net amount of dehydration depends on both the initial solute concentration of the cell sap and the subfreezing temperature, because these determine the vapor pressure differential across the plasma membrane. For example, assuming an initial cell sap concentration of approximately 0.5 osmolar, freezing at -4°C will remove about 75% of the osmotically active water from the cell. In contrast, the same freezing removes about 50% of the freezable water if the initial cell sap concentration is one osmolar (Fig. 1).



**Fig. 1.** Diagrammatic representation of cell collapse due to cellular dehydration during extracellular freezing.

Physical stress (mechanical shearing) from the presence of ice in the apoplast can also damage plant tissues. Cell membranes can thus be disrupted during freezing both by desiccation and mechanical stresses. Consequently after thawing, the cellular contents can leak out from plant tissues. The amount of leakage is a function of the magnitude of stress, which is the result of both the extent of freeze-desiccation and the duration of freezing. Quantitatively this is measured using an “ion- or electrolyte-leakage test” (Dexter *et al.* 1932), which remains the most widely used method to estimate the freezing tolerance of tissues. Conventionally, the freezing tolerance of a plant tissue is defined as the Lethal Temperature that results in 50% ion-leakage/injury, i.e., LT50, which is also strongly correlated with the temperature at which the rate of injury is maximum (Tmax; Lim *et al.* 1998a). A cold acclimated plant has a much lower (more negative) LT50 than its non-acclimated counterpart (Fig. 2A), as the threshold tolerance of tissues to freeze-desiccation shifts to colder freezing temperatures during the cold acclimation process (Fig. 2B). The physiological and/or biochemical adjustments by cells that enable such a shift has been a topic of investigation in many laboratories, including ours.

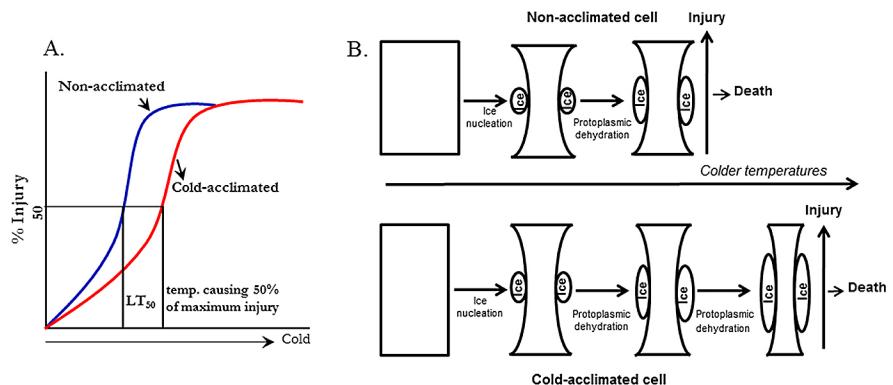


Fig. 2. (A). A stylized diagram representing a relatively lower and higher freezing tolerance, expressed as LT<sub>50</sub>, of non-acclimated and cold-acclimated plant tissues, respectively; (B) Diagrammatic representation of the shifting of the “tolerance threshold” for freeze-induced cellular dehydration to relatively colder temperatures after cold acclimation.

### Components of winter-hardiness

Winter-survival of landscape perennials in temperate and boreal zones involves a multi-component strategy during their annual cycle (Fig. 3).

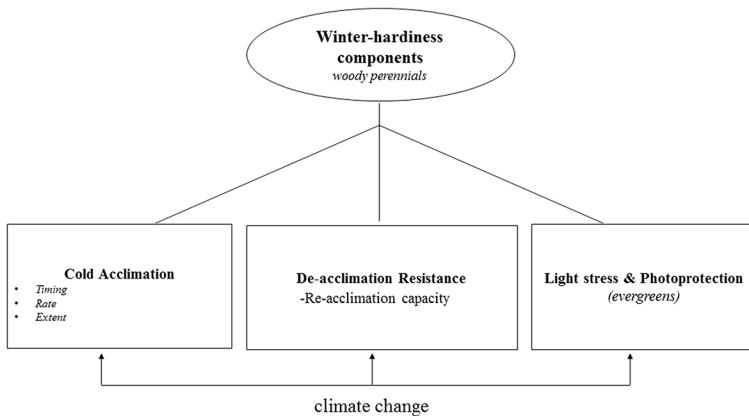


Fig. 3. Some of the key components of winter-hardiness in evergreen perennials that can be impacted by the vagaries of climate change.

**Cold-acclimation:** Cold-acclimation, the first line of defense in a protection strategy, involves the incremental acquisition of freezing tolerance by non-acclimated

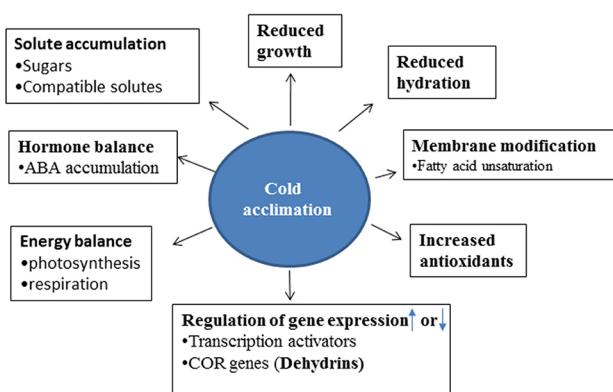
plant tissues over weeks and months through the autumn, to become maximally hardy by winter (Weiser 1970). Besides the absolute gain in freezing tolerance, when (the timing) and how efficiently (the rate) cold-acclimation occurs are also critical (Fig. 3). In most woody plants, the first stage of cold-acclimation is induced by a shortening day-length after growth cessation. This partial cold-acclimation is followed by stage two, a more substantial increase in freezing tolerance in response to cold exposure (above and below freezing) during the autumn and winter (Weiser 1970, Arora *et al.* 1992). A mechanistic understanding of the cold-acclimation process, which is a genetically-determined, complex response mediated by a myriad of physiological and biochemical changes in plant tissues (Xin and Browse 2000), could provide us with biochemical/physiological markers for a freezing tolerance or cold-acclimation ability that may be useful as screening tools in plant breeding efforts. It should also be recognized that cold-acclimation ability, i.e., the degree of freezing tolerance gained, could be influenced by the plant's age, both physiological and chronological (McNamara and Pellet 2000; Lim *et al.* 2014), and therefore one may not necessarily be able to predict the freezing tolerance potential of a mature plant in the landscape based solely on the phenotypic selection of young seedlings.

**Deacclimation resistance:** The freezing tolerance that is acquired during cold-acclimation is lost in response to warming or spring-like conditions during the annual cycle via a process called deacclimation. It may seem counterintuitive, but deacclimation kinetics, i.e., when, how much, or how fast de-acclimation occurs, can significantly impact overall winter-survival of woody plants, including rhododendrons (Kalberer *et al.* 2006). Deacclimation response is of particular significance in the context of climate change scenarios. Erratic temperature fluctuations, for example, the occurrence of spring-like conditions followed by a hard freeze, could damage prematurely deacclimated tissues and cause winter kill. Indeed, the frequency and magnitude of such fluctuations are on the rise (Jentsch *et al.* 2007; IPCC 2014) and some of the most devastating killer frosts across North America in recent years are attributed to such climate events, e.g., in the eastern USA, the Easter freeze of 2007 (Gu *et al.* 2007), the Mother's Day freeze of 2010, the killer frost of 2012, and the polar vortex of 2014. Field simulations of winter-warming events have also confirmed their damaging effects on overwintering perennials (Bokhorst *et al.* 2009, 2010). Despite a premature, partial deacclimation, plants can survive subsequent freezes if they are able to quickly and sufficiently reacclimate when cold conditions return. Reacclimation capacity, therefore, could be another important factor for winter survival by woody plants. Having an understanding of plant or environmental factors that influence deacclimation resistance and reacclimation capacity (Fig. 3) would be useful in our efforts to select and breed winter hardy genotypes, especially for their resiliency to sudden temperature extremes.

**Photoprotection:** Another component of winter-hardiness specifically relevant to broad-leaved evergreens is an ability to manage light exposure during the winter (Fig. 3). At freezing temperatures, photosynthetic biochemistry (enzymatic carboxylation and photosynthetic electron transport) becomes substantially slower, or even completely inhibited. However, green leaves continue to intercept solar radiation in winter, and in deciduous forests, winter light penetration to the understory is likely higher than that experienced during the growing season. Understory evergreens in the deciduous forests, such as rhododendrons, could thus potentially suffer from an energy input in excess of what can be processed by photosynthesis, rendering them vulnerable to photo-oxidative stress. Warmer winters, perhaps as a result of climate change, can exacerbate this situation by reducing the snow cover around short-statured evergreen shrubs, which otherwise would be insulated against excess light (Neuner *et al.* 1999). Below I also describe some of the various mechanisms that plants have evolved, anatomical and biochemical, to either tolerate or avoid light stress during winters (Adams *et al.* 2004, Wang *et al.* 2008). Insight into the photoprotection mechanisms will also be addressed as a somewhat less studied aspect of winter-hardiness.

### Cold acclimation physiology research

As indicated above, cold acclimation is a multi-genic, integrated complex response involving changes in both the physiology and biochemistry of plant tissues. Several of these major changes are illustrated in Fig. 4. Some have to do with the adjustment of cellular metabolism to the biophysical constraints imposed by low temperatures, while others with the actual induction of freezing tolerance.



**Fig. 4.** Some of the commonly observed changes in cellular processes during cold acclimation.

Freezing has a strong effect on cellular water relations, and desiccation tolerance in plant cells is a key component of the cold-acclimation process. This involves the accumulation of compounds or molecules in cells that can mitigate desiccation or maintain hydration around membranes and other proteins (enzymes). We have tested this adaptation in a series of studies with *Rhododendron* species, cultivars, and breeding populations that vary in their freezing tolerance and cold-acclimation ability. In particular, we have focused on a class of highly hydrophilic proteins called dehydrins, which are thought to serve as “molecular sponges” that help retain hydration around cell membranes and proteins during a freezing stress, thereby protecting them from freeze desiccation injury (Close 1997, Kosová *et al.* 2007).

**The association of dehydrin expression with level of freezing tolerance in F<sub>2</sub> progeny:** We created an F<sub>2</sub> progeny array derived by first crossing a super cold-hardy parent (*R. catawbiense* ‘Catalglá’, ~40-year-old; leaf LT50 ~ -52 °C) with a moderately-hardy parent (*R. fortunei*, ~40-year-old, LT50 ~ -31 °C) that resulted in *R. catawbiense* × *R. fortunei* hybrids (LT50 ~ -43 °C). We then self-pollinated these F<sub>1</sub> progeny to obtain an F<sub>2</sub> population. Leaf freezing tolerance of cold acclimated leaves from 51 F<sub>2</sub> progeny (3-year-old seedlings) and the parental plants were estimated by the ion-leakage method (see Lim *et al.* 1998b for detailed methodologies).

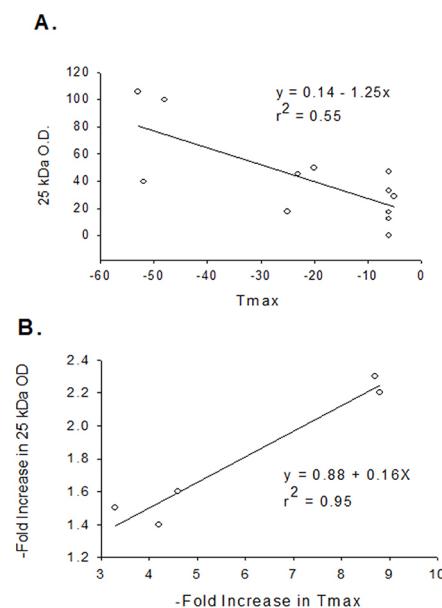
We found that a 25-kD dehydrin was the only protein clearly associated with differences in leaf freezing tolerance among F<sub>2</sub> seedlings, with a significant 50 to 100% increase in the 25-kD dehydrin level as the leaf freezing tolerance increased. The total amount of 25-kD dehydrin detected accounted for 78% of the variation in leaf freezing tolerance among parents, F<sub>1</sub>, and nine F<sub>2</sub> progeny (Lim *et al.* 1999), suggesting that the relative abundance of this dehydrin could serve as a genetic marker to distinguish between super cold-hardy and less cold-hardy *Rhododendron* genotypes.

Our study also provides some insight into genetic mechanism of inheritance: presence vs. absence (+/-) of the 25-kD dehydrin could be due to structural gene differences along with a dominant or co-dominant inheritance of dehydrin presence. Also, accumulation of several dehydrins in the F<sub>1</sub> were intermediate to parental levels, suggesting a gene dosage effect, which could result from co-dominant expression of “present” and “absent” alleles at the corresponding loci. We also detected higher molecular weight dehydrins uniquely contributed by the *R. fortunei* parent and present in the F<sub>1</sub> hybrid ‘Ceylon’, but these were barely detectable among F<sub>2</sub> progeny (Lim *et al.* 1999). The physiologically mature F<sub>1</sub> plants displayed only weak presence of these dehydrins in a cold-acclimated state.

**Dehydrin concentration variability among rhododendrons differing in their leaf freezing tolerances and geographic distributions:** In a study examining

21 species and cultivars, it was established that 11 dehydrins, including the 25-kD dehydrin, showed increased accumulation in cold acclimated leaf tissues, compared to non-cold acclimated plants (Marian *et al.* 2004). However, the 25-kD dehydrin was uniquely conserved across most (20 of the 21, or 95%) of the species surveyed (Table 1). The only *Rhododendron* species among those studied that lacked 25-kD dehydrin, *R. brookeanum*, a tropical Indonesian vireya with a low freezing tolerance (-7° C), which would not normally be exposed to very cold conditions in its native habitat. Non-cold acclimated leaves were not evaluated for freezing tolerance in this species, but previous work with various *Rhododendron* cultivars and species indicated that a non-acclimated leaf freezing tolerance within *Rhododendron* generally varied from -3° C to -7° C (Holt and Pellet 1981, Anisko and Lindstrom 1995, Lim *et al.* 1998a,b). Other tropical vireyas in section *Schistanthe* are typically injured by even slight freezing after cold acclimation (Sakai *et al.* 1986). In addition, the single dehydrin observed in *R. brookeanum*, a 41-kDa protein, did not appear to be increased in abundance in leaf tissues following fall acclimation (Table 1, see next page).

Regression analysis indicated a significant relationship between dehydrin abundance and leaf freezing tolerance across species, although a stronger relationship was obtained by standardizing the cold acclimated values relative to non-acclimated ones (Fig. 5). Results from this study reinforce those from our study with  $F_2$  progenies, further supporting our hypothesis that the 25-kD dehydrin plays a central role in *Rhododendron* cold hardiness, and suggesting that the accumulation of this particular dehydrin can be used to “predict” the extent of cold acclimation and subsequent leaf freezing tolerance.



**Fig. 5.** Association of freezing tolerance and 25-kD dehydrin abundance. (A) Regression of 25-kD O.D. on Tmax using absolute values (B) Regression of O.D. on Tmax using x-fold increase from nonacclimated to cold acclimated conditions ( $\Delta$ O.D. and  $\Delta$ Tmax, respectively) in leaves. O.D. = optical density, a quantitative measure of 25-kD band intensity; Tmax = temperature causing maximum rate of injury, a measure of leaf freezing tolerance (adapted with permission from Marian *et al.* 2004)

**Table 1.** *Rhododendron* species studied, their corresponding cold-acclimated leaf freezing tolerances, and various dehydrin proteins that accumulated in cold acclimated leaves.

Species	Leaf Freezing Tolerance C°	Dehydrins (kDa)									
		25	28	30	32	34	37	41	46	50	64
<b>Subgenus Hymenanthes</b>											
<i>R. adenogynum</i>	(-29)	X								X	
<i>R. arboreum</i>	(-20)	X								X	
<i>R. brachycarpum</i>	-60	X	X						X	X	X
<i>R. brachycarpum</i> subsp. <i>brachycarpum</i> (previously subsp. <i>tigerstedtii</i> )	ND	X	X						X	X	X
<i>R. brachycarpum</i> 'Roslyn form'*	ND	X	X						X	X	X
<i>R. catawbiense</i> 'Catalgla'	(-53)	X									
<i>R. decorum</i>	ND	X	X								
<i>R. dichroanthum</i> aff. subsp. <i>Scyphocalyx</i>	(-23)	X	X	X	X						
<i>R. fargesii</i>	ND	X								X	X
<i>R. fortunei</i> 'Gable's hardy form'*	(-38)	X	X						X	X	X
<i>R. fortunei</i> 'No. 27 DexterDexter'	ND	X	X						X	X	X
<i>R. makinoi</i>	ND	X		X					X		X
<i>R. maximum</i>	(-52)	X		X						X	
<i>R. maximum</i> (var. <i>rubrum</i> )	ND	X		X						X	
<i>R. maximum</i> 'Mt. Mitchell'	ND	X		X						X	
<i>R. metternichii</i>	(-48)	X	X							X	
<i>R. vernicosum</i> 'Gable's <i>vernicosum</i> '*	(-25)	X	X					X		X	
<i>R. degronianum</i> subsp. <i>Yakushimanum</i>	-40	X								X	

Table 1 continued.

<i>R. degronianum</i> subsp. <i>yakushimanum</i> 'Koichiro Wada'	ND	X						X	
<i>R. degronianum</i> subsp. <i>yakushimanum</i> 'Mist Maiden'	ND	X						X	
<b>Subgenus Rhododendron</b>									
<i>R. brookeanum</i>	(-7)						X <sup>2</sup>		
<i>R. dauricum</i>	-50	X		X				X	
<i>R. hirsutum</i>	ND	X				X			
<i>R. keiskei</i> 'Mt. Kuromi'	-25	X				X			
<i>R. minus</i>	ND	X		X				X	X
<i>R. mucronulatum</i>	-50	X				X			X
<i>R. myrtifolium</i>	ND	X							
<i>R. russatum</i>	-40	X			X			X	

1. Leaf freezing tolerance values in parentheses were estimated in our laboratory as Tmax (the temperature causing maximum rate of injury), whereas those without parentheses are leaf lowest survival temperatures values from Sakai *et al.* 1986. ND = no data available. 2. No increase in cold acclimated leaves compared to the non-acclimated ones (the only case in this study where a dehydrin accumulation is not higher in winter collected leaves compared to summer collected ones. (Adapted with permission from Marian *et al.* 2004)).

**Ways dehydrins may confer freezing tolerance:** Studies examining the cellular actions of dehydrins typically take two approaches: 1) *in vitro* assays using a candidate dehydrin protein and another target protein (a cold-labile enzyme) to test if dehydrins could protect the target protein against deactivation by freezing or desiccation stress; and 2) transgenic overexpression of a candidate dehydrin gene in a model plant paired with a test plant to measure the gain in freezing tolerance over the non-transformed (wild-type) counterpart. We have used both of these avenues to test the functional relevance of a *R. catawbiense* dehydrin gene, RcDhn5. This gene was identified in our laboratory using expressed sequence tag analysis, which involved the comparison of cDNA libraries from cold acclimated (January) and non-acclimated (August) leaf tissues of field grown *R. catawbiense* 'Catalgla' plants (Wei *et al.* 2005). We demonstrated that RcDhn5 has cryoprotection and dehydration stress protection properties using *in vitro* assays (Arora *et al.* 2008, Peng *et al.* 2008a, Reyes *et al.* 2008). Briefly, the *in vitro* cryoprotection assay involved subjecting a cold labile enzyme to a freeze-thaw treatment either in the presence or absence of purified RcDhn5 (Arora *et al.* 2008). In the absence of RcDhn5,

the cold labile enzyme lost ~38% activity after one, and ~ 63% activity after three freeze-thaw cycles. In contrast, ~30 – 73% higher residual enzyme activity remained in the presence of RcDhn5 (Arora *et al.* 2008). Notably, parallel assays conducted with another hydrophilic polypeptide (but not a dehydrin) used in place of RcDhn5 did not protect enzyme activity (Arora *et al.* 2008), indicating that RcDhn5 can specifically protect enzymes from freeze-thaw deactivation. Similarly, when plants were exposed to controlled desiccation stress in the presence or absence of RcDhn5, RcDhn5 rescued enzyme activity, but the magnitude of this effect differed according to the level of water stress imposed (Peng *et al.* 2008a).

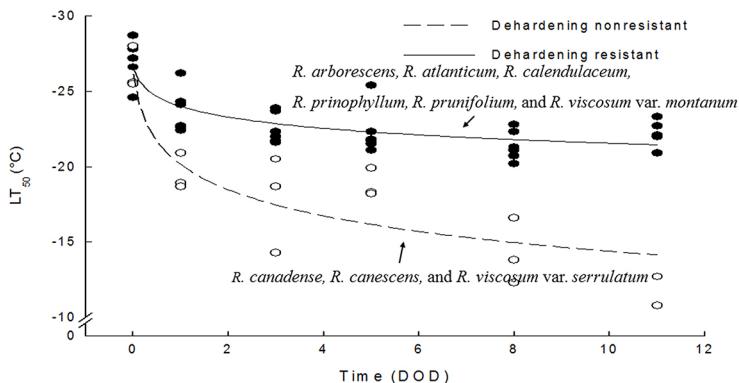
Transgenic studies in our laboratory involved overexpression of RcDhn5 in *Arabidopsis*, a model herbaceous plant, since a *Rhododendron* transgenic system is currently not available; detailed methodologies and results are presented in Peng *et al.* (2008a). Briefly, we found RcDhn5-OXP plants to be significantly more freezing tolerant than their untransformed counterparts.

### **Research on deacclimation physiology**

While autumnal cold acclimation is a gradual response (weeks to months) induced by short-days and cold temperatures, deacclimation proceeds much faster (hours to days) and is mainly driven by warm temperatures. Consequently, erratic temperature fluctuations, i.e., “unseasonal” spring-like conditions followed by a freeze, can render partially or fully deacclimated tissues vulnerable to freeze damage. Hence a plant both with high cold-acclimated hardiness and an ability to resist premature deacclimation under transient warm spells would be best positioned to escape winter cold injury. It may be reasonable to assume that plants with high midwinter hardiness would also exhibit a high degree of deacclimation resistance, and that a high cold acclimation capacity as well as deacclimation resistance both represent evolutionary responses to low minimum temperatures.

**Relationship between mid-winter hardiness and deacclimation kinetics:** We investigated this issue using nine azalea genotypes (both species and cultivars) that represented eight seed provenances, multiple USDA hardiness zones, and three habitat types: the southeastern lowlands, the Appalachian highlands, and the northeastern coastal region (Kalberer *et al.* 2007b). Buds from natural (field) cold acclimated plants were used to evaluate midwinter hardiness using a temperature controlled freeze-thaw protocol followed by visual estimation of freeze injury. To investigate whether there was an association between spring temperature fluctuations in their native habitats and deacclimation kinetics, we calculated the historic variation in temperature (Kalberer *et al.* 2007b) and the temperature range that each genotype was exposed to in its seed provenance location (NOAA 2002). Our study revealed two categories of azalea

genotypes: slow deacclimators (high deacclimation resistance) and fast deacclimators (low deacclimation resistance; Fig. 6), but there was no unequivocal relationship between proclivity to deacclimate and either the minimum temperature of habitats or the midwinter hardiness. For example, *R. prunifolium* showed both low mid-winter hardiness and a high deacclimation resistance, while *R. canadense* had the highest midwinter hardiness among all genotypes investigated, but a low deacclimation resistance. Also, *R. canadense* (native to eastern Canada and the north-Atlantic USA, and freeze hardy to -28° C) in December deacclimated faster than the more sensitive Georgian species *R. prunifolium* (freeze hardy to -24.6° C; Kalberer *et al.* 2007a). The USDA hardiness zones for *R. canadense* are 3b to 7, and the minimum average temperature for this provenance is -10.9° C, while that for the provenances of obtained *R. prunifolium* was warmer than -3° C.



**Fig. 6.** Logarithmic linear models of bud freezing tolerance (LT<sub>50</sub>) as a function of days of deacclimation (DOD) for nine azalea genotypes. The upper curve represented six genotypes with high deacclimation resistance (slow deacclimators), and the lower curve represented three genotypes with high deacclimation resistance (fast deacclimators). (Adapted with permission from Kalberer *et al.* 2007a).

Though the data indicated that the degree of midwinter hardiness reflected the latitude and minimum temperatures of habitats, as expected, azaleas originating in cold climates and with high midwinter hardiness did not always have high deacclimation resistance, which is perhaps related to other climatic and developmental factors. These results suggest that deacclimation resistance and midwinter hardiness likely represent distinct “components” of winter hardiness and are perhaps inherited independently. These should therefore be evaluated separately when selecting and breeding for improved cold hardiness.

**Environmental and biological factors that promote high deacclimation resistance in plants:** Deacclimation resistance may be a function of climate variability

in the native habitat, particularly the variability during the late winter and early spring, rather than the low temperatures experienced *per se*. Logic then follows that plants growing under relatively stable conditions would experience little evolutionary pressure to develop deacclimation resistance to transient warming. Our azalea study indicated that on the whole, genotypes originating in the Appalachian highlands, which are prone to having significant fluctuations in temperature, have relatively high deacclimation resistance in comparison to those from coastal climates, where deacclimation might be less of a threat under the cool and relatively more stable temperatures typically experienced during coastal winter and early spring conditions. It may also be argued that genotypes with greater midwinter hardiness may experience less selective pressure for strong deacclimation resistance than do less hardy ones, because the former can safely lose a relatively large amount of acclimated hardiness before becoming vulnerable to cold injury.

Alternatively, high deacclimation resistance could be prevalent in plants with delayed spring development or deeper dormancy (Lang 1987), since resumption of growth can lead directly or indirectly to irreversible deacclimation (Leinonen *et al.* 1997). Ample evidence exists to show that spring growth and flower development are not conducive to the retention of hardiness, and that tissue hardiness is negatively correlated with flower development. Consistent with this notion, flower development of *R. prunifolium*, a slow deacclimator, was slower than for other native American deciduous azaleas; a slower transition to active growth could explain the longer maintenance of hardiness in these buds. The mechanism by which ontogenetic development modulates hardiness has been the subject of some speculation, but of relatively little research. Growth and development might have a negative effect on cold hardiness because higher cellular water content during cell expansion increases the probability of ice formation. This can render cells more susceptible to mechanical damage from extracellular ice, and increases the chance that ice will develop inside the living cells, which is always lethal. Alternatively, active growth might interfere with increasing deacclimation resistance by its competition for energy resources (Ogren 1997).

**Deacclimation response variability from early to late winter:** In another study using select azalea genotypes, we showed that fully cold acclimated buds of *R. viscosum* (var. *montanum*) deacclimated by ~40 % in February when exposed to deacclimating temperatures, but the same dose of warming in December resulted in only a 19% deacclimation (Kalberer *et al.* 2007a). It is noteworthy that at the December sampling, these buds were physiologically dormant, being in an endodormant state. This is the deepest state of dormancy in autumn, before buds have met their chilling requirement, i.e., exposure to a certain minimum amount of chilling in order to resume growth, measured in chill-hours. Once the chilling requirement is met, buds transition to

an ecodormant state, at which time the inability to grow is due exclusively to non-conducive environment, such as too cold a spring, or heat or drought. In the ecodormant state, plants are primed for growth as soon as they are exposed to a conducive, spring-like environment. In our study, buds had fulfilled their chilling requirement by the February sampling and were then less resistant to deacclimation than they were in December. The physiological rationale for why plants are less prone to deacclimation in the endodormant state is not yet well understood and deserves more research in the future. Nevertheless, the influence of dormancy status/bud-break on deacclimation behavior, both of which are regulated by temperature, can be impacted by unseasonal warming and has real world practical implications.

### **Research on light-stress and photoprotection strategies**

Overwintering evergreen species face a dilemma whereby their leaves may continue to receive light during cold winters when this energy cannot be efficiently processed due to their cold-induced slower photosynthetic biochemistry. Therefore, evergreens must possess mechanisms to manage and/or tolerate light stress during cold winters (Adams *et al.* 2004; Wang *et al.* 2008, 2009). Our laboratory conducted a comparative analysis of genes expressed in leaves collected in the summer (nonacclimated; LT50 -7° C) and winter (cold acclimated; LT50 -53° C) from field-grown *R. catawbiense* (Wei *et al.* 2005). We found lower expression of several photosynthesis-related genes (e.g., RuBisCO, a small subunit precursor, among others) in the winter leaves. This research also revealed that genes encoding a protein called ELIPs (Early light induced protein) were the most abundantly expressed of all the genes in winter leaves, while no ELIPs were detected in nonacclimated leaves (Wei *et al.* 2005). ELIPs are light stress induced proteins located in the thylakoid membranes of chloroplasts and belong to the chlorophyll a/b-binding protein family, with a wide distribution among plant species (Adamska 1997, Adamska *et al.* 1999). ELIPs may bind chlorophylls under high light stress and prevent the formation of free radicals and/or function in dissipation of excess light energy in the form of heat (Adams *et al.* 2004). ELIP accumulation, therefore, may constitute an adaptive response to winter conditions (cold and high light) in evergreens, and play a key role in the protection of photosynthetic apparatus from excess light (Zarter *et al.* 2006).

These ELIPs were later catalogued into seven distinct RcELIPs homologs (for *R. catawbiense* ELIPs; Peng *et al.* 2008b). Our later research revealed that the abundance of these seven RcELIPs changed incrementally from August to December in containerized plants (~3-4 years-old) of two *Rhododendron* species, a less hardy *R. ponticum* (mid-winter leaf LT50 ~-20°C) and the super-hardy *R. catawbiense* (leaf LT50 ~-35°C; Wang *et al.* 2009). Interestingly, the rate of seasonal increase in ELIP

abundance for *R. catawbiense* was twice that for *R. ponticum* (Fig. 7), suggesting that *R. catawbiense* perhaps needs more efficient bolstering of photoprotection systems than does *R. ponticum*. This notion is curiously supported by the fact that *R. catawbiense* exhibits thermonasty while *R. ponticum* does not. Thermonasty refers to temperature-induced leaf movements (Nilsen 1987), a phenomenon where leaves droop and curl at freezing temperatures in winter (Fig. 7). One of the proposed benefits (among others) of thermonastic leaf movement is the avoidance of high light stress in the winter by reducing leaf exposure to light (Bao and Nilsen 1988), thereby facilitating the faster recovery of photosynthetic efficiency in spring (Russell *et al.* 2009). The lack of thermonasty in *R. ponticum* therefore suggests that this species is perhaps more tolerant of light stress in winter than is *R. catawbiense*. Our results on the seasonal patterns of photosynthetic efficiencies and photoinhibition in the two species support this hypothesis (Wang *et al.* 2009). This study also showed that leaves of both species had significantly higher activities of several antioxidant enzymes in the cold acclimated state; the primary role of these enzymes is to detoxify free radicals in plant cells which can accumulate in excess due to oxidative stress, including photo-oxidation.

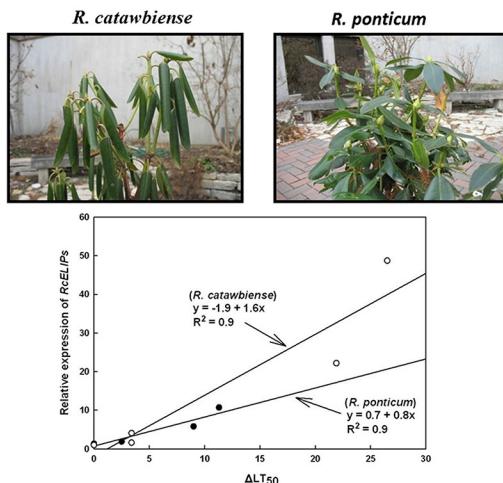


Fig. 7. The photographs in January (above panel) showing thermonastic leaf movements and lack thereof in *R. catawbiense* and *R. ponticum*, respectively. The lower graph shows the regressions of relative expression of RcELIPs on changes in leaf freezing tolerance ( $\Delta LT_{50}$ ), a measure of cold acclimation ability, for both *R. ponticum* and *R. catawbiense*. The relative expression of RcELIPs for each species in each month was calculated relative to their expression in August (taken as 1) and are based on the average of seven RcELIPs.  $\Delta LT_{50}$  are the absolute values of the LT50 difference between August and subsequent months till the December sampling (adapted with permission from Wang *et al.* 2009).

## Concluding remarks

Work in our lab has provided initial insights into the cellular and physiological mechanisms of freezing tolerance in *Rhododendron*. However, while *in vitro* studies with dehydrins suggest their importance in conferring freezing tolerance, more evidence for their *in vivo* role is warranted. In this regard, it would be useful to have a genetic transformation system for *Rhododendron* where dehydrin genes can be introduced and stably expressed. Such genetically modified plants could then be evaluated for their freezing tolerance in comparison to non-transformed controls. Also, rhododendrons, and most other plants too, contain a suite of dehydrin genes. This prompts the question as to whether some or all of these dehydrins work cooperatively to confer cryoprotection or freezing tolerance? Since, cold-acclimation is a multigenic complex response, it may be reasonable to hypothesize that two or more dehydrins cooperatively confer greater cryoprotection and freezing tolerance in an additive manner. Our work with *Rhododendron F<sub>2</sub>* progenies described above suggested that a few genes with strong additive effects were controlling variation in hardiness (Lim *et al.* 1998b).

Our deacclimation research has also suggested new research topics. For example, what determines the critical thermal dose (the combination of the extent and the duration of a warm spell) that triggers deacclimation in a given *Rhododendron* species or cultivar? We know that the dormancy status of the buds influences deacclimation behavior and that the bud break in the spring occurs only after meeting both the chilling requirement and the heat-unit requirement (release from ecodormancy). It is therefore important to include species-specific needs for the chilling requirement versus needed heat units to break ecodormancy, and both the magnitude and frequency of physiologically and regional/local relevant temperature fluctuations (rather than averages) in studies seeking to infer freezing tolerance responses under a changing climate.

Finally, more research is needed to better understand the physiological/biochemical mechanism of photoprotection by overwintering rhododendrons. In this regard, not only the performance of ELIPs, but also the utility of other changes such as the qualitative and quantitative fluctuations in xanthophyll carotenoid pigments, are being investigated in rhododendrons (J. Medeiros, pers. comm.). Accumulation of specific class of xanthophyll pigments has been previously associated with photoprotection in overwintering evergreens (Zarter *et al.* 2006), and they are believed to help dissipate excess light energy in the form of heat via non-photochemical quenching (Verhoeven *et al.* 1999, Adams *et al.* 2004). Work along this line of research is also underway in our laboratory.

## References

- Adamska, I. 1997. ELIPs-light-induced stress proteins. *Physiologia Plantarum* 100: 794–805.
- Adamska, I., M. Roobol-Bóza, M. Lindahl, and B. Andersson. 1999. Isolation of pigment-binding early light-inducible proteins from pea. *European J. Biochemistry* 260: 453–460.
- Adams III, W.W., C.R. Zarter, V. Ebbert, and B. Demmig-Adams. 2004. Photoprotective strategies of overwintering evergreens. *BioScience* 54: 41–49.
- Anisko, T., and O.M. Lindstrom. 1995. Applying the Richards function in freezing tolerance determination with electrolyte and phenolic leakage techniques. *Physiologia Plantarum* 95: 281-287.
- Arora, R., Y. Peng, D. Karlson, J.L. Reyes, and A.A. Covarrubias. 2008. Physiology of cold hardening in *Rhododendron*: Role of a dehydrin protein from *R.catawbiense* (RcDhn5) in cryoprotection improving freezing tolerance. *J. American Rhodo. Soc.* 62: 153-158.
- Arora, R., M.E. Wisniewski, and R. Scorza. 1992. Cold acclimation in genetically related (sibling) deciduous and evergreen peach (*Prunus persica* [L.] Batsch). I. Seasonal changes in cold hardiness and polypeptides of bark and xylem tissues. *Plant Physiology* 99: 1562-1568.
- Bao, Y., and E.T. Nilsen. 1988. The ecophysiological significance of leaf movements in *Rhododendron maximum* L. *J. Ecology* 69: 1578–1587.
- Bokhorst, S., J.W. Bjerke, H. Tommervik, T.V. Callaghan, and G.K. Phoenix. 2009. Winter warming events damage sub-Arctic vegetation: consistent evidence from an experimental manipulation and natural event. *J. Ecology* 97: 1408-1415.
- Bokhorst, S., J.W. Bjerke, M.P. Davey, K. Taulavuori, E. Taulavuori, K. Laine, T.V. Callaghan, and G.K. Phoenix GK. 2010. Impacts of extreme winter warming events on plant physiology in a sub-Arctic heath community. *Physiologia Plantarum* 140: 128-140.
- Close, T.J. 1997. Dehydrins: a commonality in the response of plants to dehydration and low temperature. *Physiologia Plantarum* 100: 291-296.
- Dexter, S.T., W.E. Tottingham, and L.F. Graber LF. 1932. Investigations of hardiness of plants by measurement of electrical conductivity. *Plant Physiology* 7: 63-78.
- Gu, L., P.J. Hanson, W. MacPost, D.P. Kaiser, B. Yang, R. Nemani, S.G. Pallardy, and T. Meyers. 2008. The 2007 eastern US spring freeze: increased cold damage in a warming world? *BioScience* 58: 253-262.
- Hansen, J., and E. Beck. 1988. Evidence for ideal and non-ideal equilibrium freezing of leaf water in frost hardy ivy (*Hedera helix*) and winter barley (*Hordeum vulgare*). *Plant Biology* 101: 76-82.
- Holt, M.A., and N.M. Pellett. 1981. Cold hardiness of leaf and stem organs of

- Rhododendron* cultivars. *J. American Society Horticultural Science* 106: 608-612.
- Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Part A: Global and Sectoral Aspects. (2014) Contribution of Working Group II of the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (eds. Field, C.B. et al.) (Cambridge Univ. Press).
- Jentsch, A., J. Kreyling, and C. Beierkuhnlein. 2007. A new generation of climate-change experiments: events, not trends. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment* 5: 365-374.
- Kalberer, S.R., N. Leyva-Estrada, S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 2007a. Cold hardiness of floral buds of deciduous azaleas: dehardening, rehardening, and endodormancy in late winter. *J. American Society for Horticultural Science* 132: 73-79.
- Kalberer, S.R., N. Leyva-Estrada, S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 2007b. Frost dehardening and rehardening of floral buds of deciduous azaleas depend on genotypic biogeography. *Environmental & Experimental Botany* 59: 264-275.
- Kalberer, S.R., M.E. Wisniewski, and R. Arora. 2006. Deacclimation and reacclimation of cold hardy plants: current understanding and emerging concepts. *Plant Science* 171: 3-16.
- Kosová, K., P. Vítámvás P, and I.T. Prášil. 2007. The role of dehydrins in plant response to cold. *Biologia Plantarum* 51: 601-617.
- Lang, G.A., Early, J.D., Martin, G.C., and Darnell, R.L. (1987). Endo-, Para-, and Ecodormancy: Physiological terminology and classification for dormancy research. *HortScience* 22: 371-377.
- Leinonen, I., T. Repo, and H. Hänninen. 1997. Changing environmental effects on frost hardiness of scots pine during dehardening. *Annals of Botany* 79: 133-138.
- Lim, C.-C., R. Arora, and E.D. Townsend. 1998a. Comparing Gompertz and Richards functions to estimate freezing injury in *Rhododendron* using electrolyte leakage. *J. American Society for Horticultural Science* 123: 246-252.
- Lim, C.-C., S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 1998b. Genetic study of freezing tolerance in *Rhododendron* populations: Implications for cold hardiness breeding. *J. American Rhodo. Soc.* 52: 143-148.
- Lim, C.-C., S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 1999. A 25 kD dehydrin associated with genotype-and age-dependent leaf freezing-tolerance in *Rhododendron*: a genetic marker for cold hardiness? *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 99: 910-918.
- Lim, C.-C., S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 2014. Cold hardiness increases with age in juvenile *Rhododendron* populations. *Frontiers in Plant Science* 5: 542.
- Marian, C.O., S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora R. 2004. Dehydrin variability among *Rhododendron* spp: A 25 kDa dehydrin is highly conserved and associated with cold acclimation across a wide array of species. *New Phytologist* 161: 773-780.
- McNamara, S., and H. Pellet H. 2000. Cold hardiness of *Phellodendron sachalinense*

- Friedr. Schmidt seedlings increases with age. *HortScience* 35: 304-305.
- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (2002) Climatology of the United States no. 81: monthly station normals of temperature, precipitation, and heating and cooling degree days: 1971-2000. National Climatic Data Center / National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Asheville, NC
- Neuner, G., D. Ambach, and K. Aichner. 1999. Impact of snow cover on photoinhibition and winter desiccation in evergreen *Rhododendron ferrugineum* leaves during subalpine winter. *Tree Physiology* 19: 725-732.
- Nilsen, E.T. 1987. Influence of water relations and temperature on leaf movements of *Rhododendron species*. *Plant Physiology* 83: 607-612.
- Ögren, E. 1997. Relationship between temperature, respiratory loss of sugar and premature dehardening in dormant scots pine seedlings. *Tree Physiology* 17: 47-51.
- Peng, Y., W. Lin, H. Wei, S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 2008b. Phylogenetic analysis and seasonal cold acclimation-associated expression of early light-induced protein genes of *Rhododendron catawbiense*. *Physiologia Plantarum* 132: 44-52.
- Peng, Y., J.L. Reyes, H. Wei, Y. Yang, D. Karlson, A.A. Covarrubias, S.L. Krebs, A. Fessehaie, and R. Arora. 2008a. RcDhn5, a cold acclimation-responsive dehydrin from *Rhododendron catawbiense* rescues enzyme activity from dehydration effects in vitro and enhances freezing tolerance in RcDhn5 overexpressing *Arabidopsis* plants. *Physiologia Plantarum* 134: 583-597.
- Reye, J.L., F. Campos, H. Wei, R. Arora, Y. Yang, D.T. Karlson, and A.A. Covarrubias AA. 2008. Functional dissection of hydrophilins during in vitro freeze protection. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 31: 1781-1790.
- Russell, R.B., T.T. Lei, and E.T. Nilsen. 2009. Freezing induced leaf movements and their potential implications to early spring carbon gain: *Rhododendron maximum* as exemplar. *Functional Ecology* 23: 463-471.
- Sakai, A., L. Fuchigami, and C.J. Weiser. 1986. Cold hardiness in the genus *Rhododendron*. *J. American Society for Horticultural Science* 111: 273-80.
- Verhoeven, A.S., W.W. Adams III, and B. Demmig-Adams. 1999. The xanthophyll cycle and acclimation of *Pinus ponderosa* and *Malva neglecta* to winter stress. *Oecologia* 118: 277-287.
- Wang, X., R. Arora, H.T. Horner, and S.L. Krebs. 2008. Structural adaptations in overwintering leaves of thermonastic and nonthermonastic *Rhododendron* species. *J. American Society for Horticultural Science* 133: 768-776.
- Wang, X., Y. Peng, J.W. Singer, A. Fessehaie, S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 2009. Seasonal changes in photosynthesis, antioxidant systems and ELIP expression in a thermonastic and non-thermonastic *Rhododendron species*: a comparison of photoprotective strategies in overwintering plants. *Plant Science* 177: 607-617.
- Wei, H., A.L. Dhanaraj, L.J. Rowland, Y. Fu, S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 2005.

- Comparative analysis of expressed sequence tags (ESTs) from cold-acclimated and non-acclimated leaves of *Rhododendron catawbiense* Michx. *Planta* 221: 406-416.
- Weiser, C.J. 1970. Cold resistance and injury in woody plants. *Science* 169: 1269-1278.
- Xin, Z., and J. Browse. 2000. Cold comfort farm: the acclimation of plants to freezing temperatures. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 23: 893-902.
- Zarter, C.R., W.W. Adams III, V. Ebbert, D.J. Cuthbertson, I. Adamska, and B. Demmig-Adams. 2006. Winter down-regulation of intrinsic photosynthetic capacity coupled with up-regulation of Elip-like proteins and persistent energy dissipation in a subalpine forest. *New Phytologist* 172: 272-282.

### Acknowledgments

This journal paper of the Iowa Agriculture and Home Economics Experiment Station, Ames, Iowa, Project No. 3657, was supported by the Hatch Act and State of Iowa funds. This research was supported, in part, by grants from American Rhododendron Society, USDA Woody landscape Plant Crop Germplasm Research Corporation, and the Iowa Nursery & Landscape Association. I specially thank Dr. Stephen L. Krebs (Director, The David G. Leach Research Station of The Holden Arboretum) for his expertise and cooperation, and the employees of Holden Arboretum for supplying facilities and resources for most of this research. I gratefully acknowledge the help from Dr. Juliana Medeiros (Holden Arboretum) and Dr. Glen Jamieson (American Rhododendron Society) for thoughtful editing and review of this manuscript.

## **Section: Physiological Ecology**

### **Chapter 3**

---

# **Mini-review of *Rhododendron* Ecophysiology**

**Erik T. Nilsen**  
**Blacksburg, Virginia**  
**United States**



#### **Introduction**

The species of *Rhododendron* serve as excellent models for studying the functional significance of adaptive traits. Such research is a primary underpinning of plant physiological ecology and, as a result, there is a long history of research on trait variation among species and its significance to the physiology and ecology of *Rhododendron*. This mini-review covers adaptive traits of photosynthesis, water relations, energy balance and nutrient relations. In particular, adaptive traits of leaves in response to habitat resource variation such as leaf size, trichome abundance, stomatal metrics, thermonastic leaf movements and idioblast cells are included. These diverse leaf adaptive traits occur in the context of the overriding constraints resulting from a highly safe against freezing embolisms but weakly efficient vascular system. Major ecological characteristics of *Rhododendron* species such as drought tolerance, cold adaptation, nutrient use efficiency and habitat preference are shown to be a syndrome that reflects the adaptive permutations of the vascular system.

#### **A primer of physiological ecology**

The main goal of the scientific discipline of Plant Physiological Ecology is to explain or understand ecological patterns by employing research on physiological processes that underpin those ecological patterns. For example, in order to understand why plants in alpine habitats have different morphological and anatomical traits than similar species in lowland habitats, the climatic influences of elevation on physiological processes needs to be understood. Ultra-violet radiation (UV) is higher in alpine habitats and excessive UV radiation can inhibit physiological processes. Therefore, alpine plants have morphological, structural and chemical means of reducing the quantity of UV radiation that penetrates to important metabolic processes. In essence, physiological

ecology focuses on variation in physiological processes and the resulting functional traits of plants that control ecological patterns (Larcher 1995). Although there are many different physiological processes included in this discipline, photosynthesis, water relations, nutrient relations and energy relations are the most commonly studied (Nobel 1991). Therefore, this mini-review of *Rhododendron* physiological ecology will be focused on how these four physiological processes determine the performance (growth) of *Rhododendron* species in different habitat types.

Physiological ecology is particularly pertinent at this time because of the changes happening on the planet. Climatic warming will dramatically change the nature of local habitats and plants within their current ranges, because of their immobility, will either acclimate, adapt, or perish based on their physiological responses to those changes. Already, large-scale tree mortality occurring in conifer forests in western United States can be related to changes in water availability and its effect on physiological processes of those trees (Zhang *et al.* 2017). Moreover, the interface between climate change and expanding human habitation will inevitably create novel habitats that will test the physiological tolerances of plant species. Many *Rhododendron* species have been red-listed as endangered or threatened because of the nexus of climate change and human habitation (Ma *et al.* 2014). It is only through an understanding of the physiological ecology of plants that an effective conservation of plant based natural resources including *Rhododendron* species may be attained.

Research on the physiological ecology of *Rhododendron* has a long history and covers species across the northern hemisphere. My effort here is to summarize what that research has taught us about the physiological ecology of *Rhododendron* and its ecological implications. I will review what is known about the four main processes studied in physiological ecology and then summarize their combined effect on the ecology of *Rhododendron*. This mini-review covers general patterns, includes some important publications and provides a starting point for those interested in the subjects covered. This mini-review is meant to be an introduction to *Rhododendron* physiological ecology, and is not an exhaustive treatment.

## Photosynthesis

Photosynthesis has been studied in many species of *Rhododendron*, yet research has focused on the American *R. maximum* and the European *R. ferrugineum*. Based on these studies, photosynthetic rates of evergreen *Rhododendron* species are characteristically low, compared with plants in general, because of low leaf nitrogen concentration and low stomatal conductance (Nilsen *et al.* 1988, Russell *et al.* 2009).

Net photosynthetic rates reach their highest rate during the first year after leaf formation and decrease slowly until leaf abscission (Nilsen 1992). In some *Rhododendron*

species, whole plant photosynthesis is dominated by the new flush each year and the older leaves serve primarily in nutrient conservation (Poron and Lamaze 2007). The decrease in photosynthesis with age in evergreen *Rhododendron* is due to damage to chloroplasts by high light levels during cold winter conditions that adds up after each winter (Nilsen *et al.* 1988). This synergy of light intensity and cold conditions is accentuated in a temperate habitat where evergreen *Rhododendron* species grow under a deciduous canopy. In these habitats light level is low (because of the tree canopy) under the warmer conditions when leaves are made and mature; however, during the cold winter the canopy trees are leafless causing light intensity to increase for the evergreen *Rhododendron* leaves.

In comparison with leaves on the same plants in low light environments, plants in high light conditions have short leaf survivorship, their leaves are relatively small and photosynthesis is relatively high (Nilsen 1992). Light saturation of photosynthesis occurs at moderately low light intensity ( $400\text{--}700 \text{ mmol m}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ ), even in environments with relatively high radiation (Nilsen 1992, Cai *et al.* 2014). Also, it only requires between 10 and 15  $\text{mmol m}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$  photosynthetic photon flux density (PPFD) to compensate for carbon lost by respiration. Therefore, photosynthesis in *Rhododendron* is adapted to relatively low radiation, and *Rhododendron* species acclimate to high radiation by reducing leaf size and shortening leaf longevity instead of dramatically changing the light response patterns of photosynthesis (Bao and Nilsen 1988, Lipscomb and Nilsen 1990).

The light reactions of photosynthesis reside on internal membranes of the chloroplast and are particularly sensitive to damage by excessive radiation. Snow cover can prevent photo-inhibition by high light (Neuner *et al.* 1999) for *Rhododendron* species in alpine areas, but in habitats with less snow cover, evergreen leaves must either avoid the high light or have physiological photo-protection mechanisms. There are small molecular weight proteins in the chloroplast called Early Light Induced Proteins (ELIP), which are capable of preventing some of the damage by excessive radiation during the excessively cold winter temperatures. ELIPs have been shown to increase in concentration during cold conditions in some *Rhododendron* taxa (Peng *et al.* 2008). High light during cold conditions can cause an increase in reactive oxygen molecules such as ozone, hydrogen peroxide and singlet oxygen. Plants can remove those reactive oxygen molecules using enzymes in the chloroplast, such as with peroxidases and catalases, and both these compounds increase in abundance during cold adaptation in some *Rhododendron* species (Wang *et al.* 2009). Therefore, temperate evergreen *Rhododendron* species have physiological capacity to protect their leaves from damage by high light in the winter. However, the strength of the physiological acclimation to cold varies significantly among species and may have important implications to the distribution of species

(Wang et al. 2009). Those species that have evolved physiological tolerance are able to have a wider range and have greater tolerance to environmental variation.

If the physiological ability to compensate for the cellular disruptions caused by excessive radiation is only partially effective, then a mechanism of avoiding the excessive radiation is important. The negative influence of high light during the winter can be avoided by dropping leaves in the winter (being deciduous) or moving the evergreen leaves away from the light source when it is cold by lowering them or rolling them up (thermonastic leaf movements). Many evergreen species of *Rhododendron* that inhabit temperate forest environments have thermonastic leaf movements (Figure 1). In fact, there is a very good correlation between the strength of cold tolerance and the amount of thermonastic leaf movement (Nilsen 1991, Nilsen and Tolbert 1993). Leaves droop (curl) and roll in response to low air temperature during the winter. Leaf curling is primarily determined by petiole turgor pressure (Nilsen 1987) while rolling is primarily determined by leaf lamina temperature (Nilsen *et al.* 2014). When leaf curling is prevented during the winter, quantum yield (increase of photosynthesis as light intensity increases) of photosynthesis is inhibited (Nilsen and Bao 1988), and light saturated photosynthesis decreases the following spring (Nilsen 1992, Russell and Nilsen 2009). Understory plants can gain most of their annual carbon gain during the early spring before canopy trees leaf out. Therefore, thermonastic leaf movements protect *Rhododendron* leaf photosynthesis during the coldest conditions in the winter

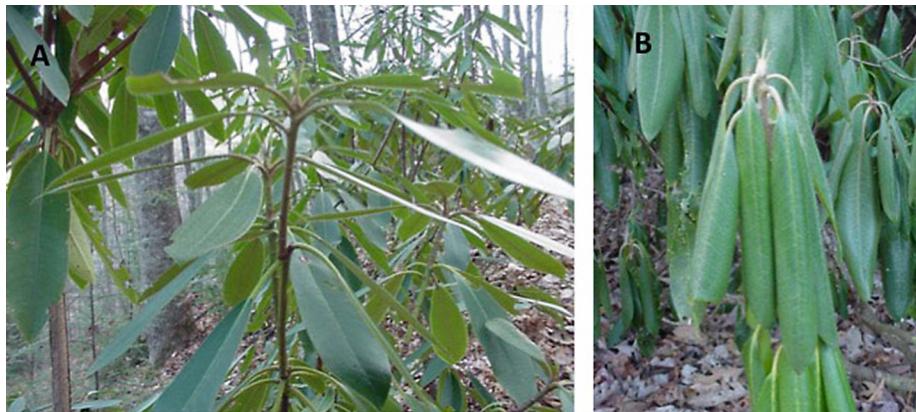


Figure 1: Images of *Rhododendron maximum* leaves in the understory of a southern deciduous forest in Virginia, USA. A) Leaf position during warm periods in the winter. B) Leaf position when the air temperature is below 2°C. The position of these leaves is a consequence of thermonastic leaf movements.

so that leaves can take advantage of the early spring light (Russell and Nilsen 2009).

The dynamics of photosynthesis for evergreen *Rhododendron* species in tropical environments ought to be very different from those in temperate environments. Very little is known about photosynthesis of tropical *Rhododendron* species. My personal measurements of photosynthesis of three tropical vireya species (growing in a greenhouse) suggest that maximum rates of photosynthesis are similar to those for temperate species. I am unaware of any published research at this time on photosynthesis of tropical *Rhododendron* species.

## Water relations

Plant traits associated with water accumulation, transport, distribution and loss have important implications for plant physiological ecology. Those hydrological traits can determine plant habitat distribution, the morphology of plant parts and their anatomy. In fact, several anatomical and morphological traits are considered indicators of drought tolerance (Nilsen and Orcutt 1996). One way to characterize water relations functional traits is to separate liquid water flow (hydraulic traits) from vapor based traits (transpiration). Although we separate liquid flow from vapor flow in this mini-review, we understand that these traits are intimately linked because they are arranged in a series; liquid water flows from the roots to leaves and then evaporates out stomata to the atmosphere.

The great majority of *Rhododendron* species have stomata only on the underside of the leaf (hypostomatous). However, one species (*R. saxifragoides*) has stomata on both leaf surfaces (Nilsen and Tulyananda 2015), which is maintained in 50% of the plants when hybridized with a hypostomatous species (Nilsen 2011). Stomatal density varies from 50 to 700 per mm<sup>2</sup> among species (Nilsen *et al.* 2014) and stomatal size can vary by up to 50% among species. Potential transpiration from the leaf is directly related to the product of stomatal density and the square of stomatal size, i.e., the Stomatal Pore Index (SPI = density x size<sup>2</sup>). Therefore, transpiration can vary greatly among species due to the variation in both density and size. However, in most plant species, stomatal density is negatively correlated with stomatal size, which reduces the variation in SPI, and this negative correlation holds for *Rhododendron* species. Nevertheless,, in comparison to many other plant species, *Rhododendron* stomatal size is significantly smaller at any stomatal density (Nilsen *et al.* 2014). Thus, the SPI of *Rhododendron* species suggests low potential transpiration and greater water conservation. Stomatal pore index can increase with an increase in elevation, suggesting higher whole plant water use. However, leaf area decreases with increasing elevation, and nutrition increases, resulting in an increase in water use efficiency at high elevations compared with that at low elevations (Taneda *et al.* 2016).

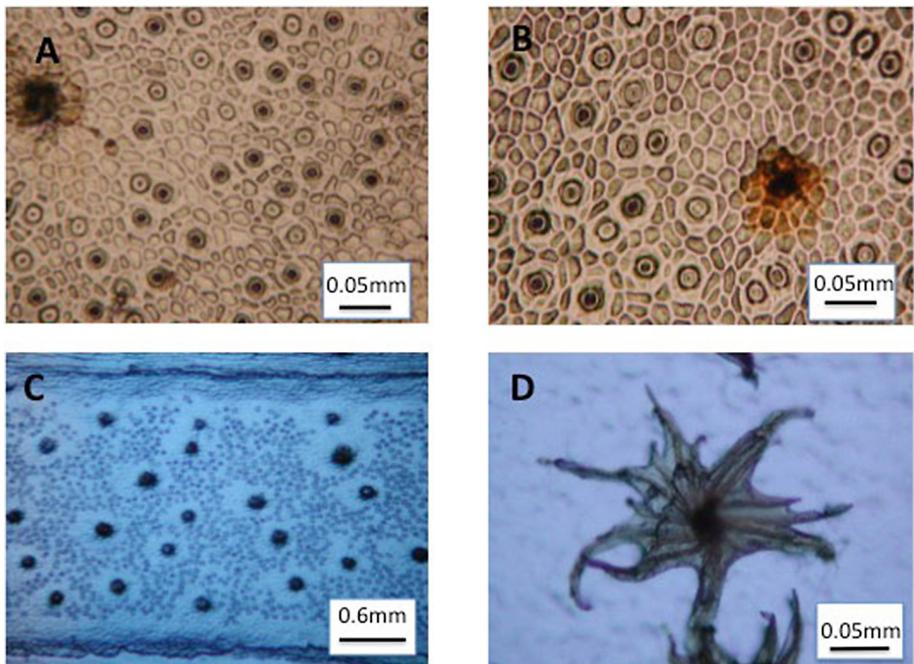


Figure 2: Light microscopic images of scales and stomata on *Rhododendron* species leaves. A) Stomata and one peltate scale on the adaxial surface of a *R. saxifragoides* leaf. B) Stomata and one peltate scale on the abaxial surface of a *R. saxifragoides* leaf. C) Scales and stomata on the abaxial leaf surface of *R. stenophyllum*. Note the region around the scale bases that are devoid of stomata. D) Dendroid scale from *R. bryophyllum*.

Most measurements of *Rhododendron* transpiration, particularly for evergreen species, are low when compared to other plant species (Lipp and Nilsen 1997). This low transpiration may be partly a consequence of low SPI, interference by epidermal hairs and scales, anatomical traits of leaves or the sums of any or all these processes. Abaxial hairs and scales are morphological traits on *Rhododendron* leaves that vary in shape, height and density dramatically among species and can have a significant effect on water conservation (Nilsen *et al.* 2014). The abundance of scales affects water conservation because of the amount of epidermal surface they occupy (Figure 2). The greater the epidermal surface occupied by scales and the stomatal free zone around the scales, the greater will be the water conservation (Nilsen *et al.* 2014, Nilsen and Tulananda 2015).

Water conservation is also determined by anatomical traits. Leaf succulence reaches its highest amount in tropical species of *Rhododendron*, possibly because many are

epiphytic (Tulananda 2016). Idioblasts, which are large cells filled with water near the top epidermis (Nilsen and Scheckler 2003), enhance succulence in relatively thin leaves (Figure 3). Moreover, the larger the number of idioblasts in the leaf, the greater will a plant's ability to maintain turgor at low leaf water content (Tulyananda and Nilsen 2017). Specialized anatomical traits have evolved for drought tolerance in tropical *Rhododendron*, with idioblasts confined to species of vireya (section *Schistanthe*), which is the largest section in genus *Rhododendron*. Every member of section *Schistanthe* that I have checked (150+ species) have idioblasts, except for *R. saxifragoides*. At this time I have found only one non-vireya species that may have well-developed idioblasts (*R. camelifolia*). However, some tropical species outside of vireyas do have a hypodermis

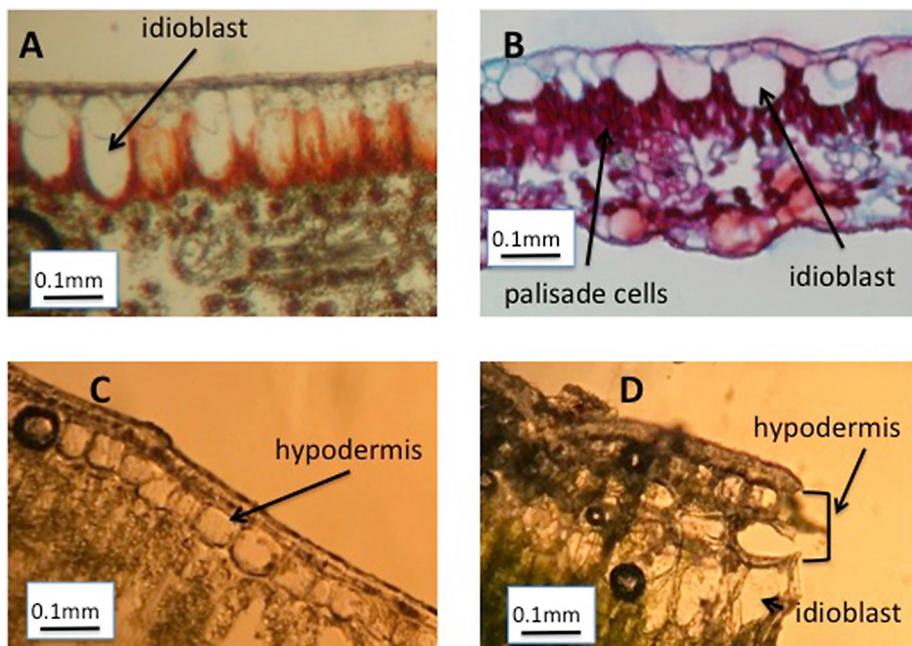


Figure 3: Images of idioblasts in leaves of tropical *Rhododendron* species. A) Free hand cross section of a *R. brookeanum* leaf showing a continuous sheet of idioblasts just below the adaxial epidermis and extending past the bottom of the palisades cells (shown in red); B) Microtome section stained with saffranin of a *R. celebicum* leaf showing both abaxial and adaxial epidermis and idioblasts below the adaxial epidermis but not extending into the palisades cell layer; C) Hand cross section of a *R. nutallii* leaf showing the hypodermis common for leaves on species in subsection *Maddenia*, but no idioblasts; D) Free hand cross section of *R. pudorinum* leaf showing the presence of both a hypodermis and idioblasts.

(Figure 3) and some vireyas such as *R. pudorinum* have both a hypodermis and idioblasts. Adaxial idioblasts may have evolved from a hypodermis in vireyas, but this evolutionary trajectory is unconfirmed.

Even though drought tolerance mechanisms are evident in the structure and function of *Rhododendron* leaves, most *Rhododendron* species inhabit relatively humid and wet habitats. The vascular anatomy of *Rhododendron* stems and its effects on hydraulic flow is a main reason why *Rhododendron* species have drought tolerant leaf traits and low transpiration, yet are restricted to moist habitats. Vessels in *Rhododendron* stems (Figure 4) are particularly narrow compared to many other plant species (Tulyananda 2016, Cordero and Nilsen 2002, Lipp and Nilsen 1997, Noshiro 1995). Narrow vessels increase resistance for water flow in stems, which constrains the amount of water flow the stems can transport to leaves. Given the constraint on hydraulic flow, it is likely that *Rhododendron* leaf water content will decrease quickly if too much transpiration occurs, resulting in water stress. Thus, *Rhododendron* species characteristically have low transpiration rates, stomatal closure early in the day and leaf water conservation features when growing in habitats that have high water evaporative demand (Lipp and Nilsen 1997).

Because the water transport vessels in *Rhododendron* stems are particularly narrow, they are also fairly sensitive to drought induced water flow failure caused by embolisms in the vessels (Lipp and Nilsen 1997, Cordero and Nilsen 2002). Tension caused by excessive evaporative demand relative to water flow capacity in the stem can create embolisms, which can completely block water flow and cause tissue death. Therefore, leaf transpiration must be kept relatively low to avoid stem, and possible plant, death. However, narrow vessels can be beneficial, as they are an important defense against freezing damage on hydraulic flow in temperate *Rhododendron* species.

During a freeze, air in stem water can come out of solution and cause bubbles (embolisms) in the vessels. These freeze-thaw induced embolisms can cause 100% blockage of water flow in the winter. Many temperate forest trees must construct new vessels in the spring before creating new leaves because of this freeze-induced blockage of water flow in older vessels that were made during the previous growing season. As mentioned above, evergreen *Rhododendron* shrubs in temperate habitats gain a large portion of their annual carbon gain in the early spring. Therefore, building new vessels in the spring would greatly reduce this important carbon gain in *Rhododendron* species and potentially result in carbon starvation. However, freeze induced embolisms can be prevented (bubbles are less likely to coalesce into a large bubble in a narrow vessel during a freeze-thaw event) or quickly repaired if vessels are narrow (Medeiros and Pockman 2014). In accordance, vessels of evergreen *Rhododendron* species that inhabit cold climates are narrower than those that inhabit warmer climates (Cordero and

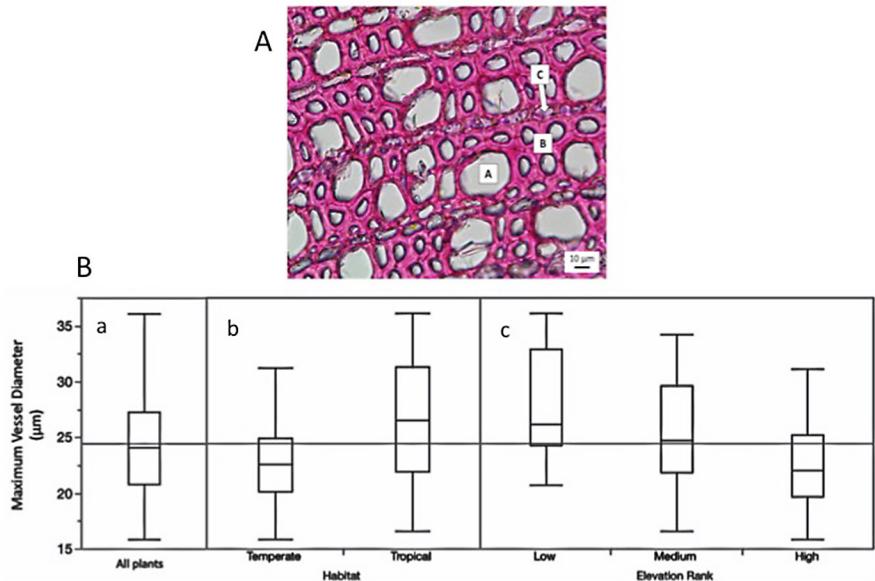


Figure 4: Characteristics of a *Rhododendron* vascular system. A) Cross section of wood from a stem of *R. jasminiflorum* stained with safranin. A = a vessel element, B = a fiber, C = a parenchyma cell; B) Results from measuring mean vessel diameter across 70 *Rhododendron* species from temperate and tropical habitats. All species were growing at the Rhododendron Species Foundation and Botanical Garden, Federal Way, Washington, USA. a) mean vessel diameter for all sampled species, b) mean vessel diameters for tropical or temperate species, c) mean vessel diameter for species whose mean native habitat elevations are low (0 – 1200 m), medium (1201 – 2400 m), or high (>2400 m).

Nilsen 2002). Thus, the narrow vessels of evergreen *Rhododendron* stems are an effective protective measure against freeze-induced embolisms (Lipp and Nilsen 1997, Cordero and Nilsen 2002).

Given that narrow vessels protect against freeze-induced embolism yet constrain water flow, this trait may be maladaptive for tropical species of *Rhododendron* that do not experience any freezes. Having narrow vessels is considered a safety trait, while having relatively high hydraulic flow is considered an efficiency trait. Because both the safety and efficiency of stem water flow is dependent upon vessel traits, a trade-off results. Narrow vessels at a low density result in high safety while dense, larger diameter vessels lead to high efficiency. A recent comparison of the twig wood from temperate and tropical species of *Rhododendron* has shown that tropical species have higher efficiency and lower safety than do temperate species (Tulyananda and Nilsen 2017). Moreover, stem safety increases as the elevation of the native range increases for both temperate

and tropical *Rhododendron* species. However, the increase in efficiency of tropical *Rhododendron* stems is small, and water flow constraint still dominates the hydraulic flow of these species. Leaves on tropical species also have anatomical traits reflective of greater drought tolerance than their temperate counterparts (Tulyananda 2016). In fact, leaf succulence traits are much more developed in tropical *Rhododendron* species when compared to temperate species. Therefore, as shown by their stem anatomy, water conservation is still important for both temperate and tropical *Rhododendron* species.

## Nutrient relations

*Rhododendron* species are commonly found in habitats with acidic soils that have relatively low nutrient concentrations, particularly for nitrogen. The ammonium ion is the most available form of soil nitrogen in low nutrient acidic soils, and so most *Rhododendron* species preferentially absorb ammonium ions rather than nitrate ions. The low nutrient content of leaves results in a recalcitrant leaf litter with a relatively high carbon to nitrogen ratio, which decomposes relatively slowly in streams and soil. The result is a negative feed back loop in which increases in the biomass of *Rhododendron* results in a further decrease in soil nutrition, particularly for nitrogen. Thus, if a major herbivore of *Rhododendron* (such as white tailed deer) is removed from an ecosystem, the shrub abundance increases and the soil nutrition decreases (Zamin and Grogan 2013).

Many plant species have a symbiotic relationship with soil fungi called mycorrhizae. Types of mycorrhizae are classified based on the type of fungus and the way the fungus joins the roots of the associated plant. Some fungi are exclusively on the outside of roots (ectomycorrhizae) while other fungi integrate into the root cells (endomycorrhizae). Another class of mycorrhizal fungi only infects species of the plant family Ericaceae (ericoid mycorrhizae), which is the case for *Rhododendron* species. Ericoid mycorrhizae are endomycorrhizae whose mycelia (fungal body) extend out into the very top surfaces of the soil and litter. Therefore, ericoid mycorrhizae can absorb nutrients immediately as they are decomposed by the fungi from the litter, which may prevent roots and mycorrhizae of other species from getting those nutrients. Also, nitrogen is mineralized as ammonium ions and later converted to nitrite and eventually nitrate by soil bacteria. Thus, ericoid mycorrhizae are likely capable of absorbing excess ammonium ions. When the excess of soil ammonium ions is taken in by the mycorrhizae, some of the absorbed nitrogen can diffuse into the *Rhododendron* plant and enhance the host plant's nutrient accumulation.

Litter (dead leaves, flowers and stems) of *Rhododendron* species tends to be nutrient poor, and can also release compounds into the soil that have negative effects on soil nutrition. As a result, the soil nutrition level under dense colonies of *Rhododendron*

plants can become significantly lower than the level in soils in the surrounding area (Horton *et al.* 2009). Moreover, polyphenols that are released from the decomposing litter of *Rhododendron* plants can inhibit nitrogen cycling bacteria, thereby limiting the conversion of ammonium to nitrate (Wurtzburger *et al.* 2007), which in turn will increase the relative abundance of ammonium ions for rhododendrons. It should be noted that in *Rhododendron*, a high proportion of nutrients are reabsorbed into the plant body before leaves are lost to litter. This indicates that although nutrient levels, and particularly nitrogen, are generally low in *Rhododendron* leaves, nutrient use efficiency is good because of their strong retention of nutrients.

### **Energy balance relationships**

The temperature of leaves is intimately related to the leaf energy balance. Under conditions when the energy input is greater than the output, leaf temperature increases. The most important energy inputs to *Rhododendron* leaves are solar radiation and infrared radiation. The amount of solar radiation hitting the leaf depends upon the exposure of the leaf to the sunlight. The amount of infrared radiation coming to the leaf depends upon the relative temperature of the environment around the leaf. The higher the temperature of the objects around the leaf, the higher the infrared input to the leaf. The most significant outputs of energy from a *Rhododendron* leaf are latent heat exchange from water evaporating off the leaf through their stomata and conductive heat loss directly from the leaf surface to the turbulent air around the leaf. The magnitude of latent heat exchange is dependent upon transpiration, which on a leaf area basis is relatively low for *Rhododendron* leaves compared to other plant species. The amount of conductive energy loss from a *Rhododendron* leaf is inversely dependent upon the length of the leaf in the direction of the wind (Nobel 1991). Therefore, the larger the leaf, the lower will be its conductive heat loss. As a result of the balance between inputs and outputs of energy to a *Rhododendron* leaf, there is a tendency for larger *Rhododendron* leaves to heat up in regions of higher energy more than would those plants with smaller leaves. This is one reason why leaf area is smaller for plants of any species when growing in higher light sites when compared to their growing in lower light sites (Nilsen 1986).

*Rhododendron* that inhabit forests are generally bathed in low radiation intensity due to the forest canopy. However, gaps in the forest canopy can result in patches of high radiation that penetrate down into the understory where the *Rhododendron* reside (sunflecks). Leaf temperature rapidly increases when leaves on *Rhododendron* in an understory experience a sunfleck. I have measured up to a 15° C increase in leaf temperature over air temperature for *R. maximum* leaves in a sunfleck. This elevated leaf temperature was not detrimental to the *R. maximum* leaves and in fact, the temperature optimum for photosynthesis was that of the elevated leaf temperature experiencing a

sunfleck.

Ultraviolet radiation (UV) is part of the total radiation impinging on the leaf surface. High-energy UV is a relatively small component of the total solar energy hitting a leaf because most UV is removed by ozone in the atmosphere. Thus, UV has an insignificant effect on leaf energy balance, yet UV can have a detrimental effect on metabolism and genetics because nucleic acids and proteins are sensitive to UV. The atmosphere thins near the poles and is thinner at high elevation sites, which makes the potential impact of UV on plant metabolism greater closer to the poles and at higher elevations. Therefore, adaptations for reducing UV radiation are more likely to occur in *Rhododendron* species in northern habitats and at high elevations.

Mechanisms that plants use to limit UV exposure include both structural and chemical characteristics. For example, a think layer of wax on the top leaf surface and a multiple layer epidermis can reduce the intensity of UV in the leaf region that performs most photosynthesis (Palisades and spongy mesophyll). In addition, there are several chemicals that absorb UV radiation, such as anthocyanins. A high concentration of UV absorbing molecules in the top epidermis can significantly reduce UV radiation load inside a leaf. Another important UV protection mechanism is an ability to repair the damage created by UV exposure. Plants have a receptor for UV type B that induces the synthesis of both DNA repair enzymes that repair damage to nucleic acids from UV exposure and of antioxidant enzymes to eliminate reactive oxygen molecules from the cells.

Few studies have been performed on the consequences of UV exposure in *Rhododendron* leaves, but it is likely that high elevation species of *Rhododendron* ought to have more effective mechanisms in both reducing UV impacts and repairing UV exposure damage on the plant's metabolism. For example, the photochemical reflectance index (a measure of the proportion of UV reflected) is relatively high for *R. ferrugineum* at high elevation sites compared with other plant species at the same site (Filella and Peñuelas 1999). Evergreen leaves like those of *R. ferrugineum* in alpine habitats benefit from UV protection mechanisms. Also, methods of UV radiation protection generally increase as leaves age due to changes in their cuticular thickness and leaf structure that may not be related to quantity of UV screening chemicals (Rhuland and Day 1996). Thus, there is a complex relationship between habitat, leaf longevity, leaf age, leaf structure, leaf chemical composition and repair mechanisms that determine the relative tolerance of *Rhododendron* leaves to UV exposure.

## **General Implications for *Rhododendron* physiological ecology**

The functional traits for *Rhododendron* considered in this mini-review can be melded into a general syndrome that governs the way *Rhododendron* species interact both with their environment and with other species. Wood anatomy is central to *Rhododendron* functional traits and governs *Rhododendron* distributions and interactions with other species.

Restricted stem water flow due to narrow vessels limits productivity, promotes leaf longevity and predisposes plants to a high resource use efficiency. However, wood anatomy can also constrain species to moist habitats in order to minimize the likelihood of drought. Although wood anatomy constrains *Rhododendron* species to a low productivity, *Rhododendron* species can be very competitive because of their high resource use efficiency and their negative impact on availability of resources by other species. Thickets of *Rhododendron* can create areas of low light, poor nutrients and limited water, i.e., a habitat where many other species cannot survive (Beier *et al.* 2005). Moreover, the number of *Rhododendron* species that are trees speaks to the ability of *Rhododendron* leaf and root adaptations that increase xylem flow enough to support the water needs of a canopy tree.

Wood anatomical features also promote the survival of *Rhododendron* at high elevation and latitude because of their protection against damage by freezing. A major variation in leaf traits such as size, anatomy, movement and surface appendages has allowed *Rhododendron* species to diversify into many different habitat types. Therefore, even though wood anatomy might have constrained *Rhododendron* species to a limited number of suitable habitats, adaptations in leaf functional traits have compensated and have allowed *Rhododendron* species to proliferate and succeed in a wide diversity of habitats. Moreover, it may be that the ability of *Rhododendron* to adapt to a diversity of habitats has resulted in a wide diversity in its flower structure due to the variation in pollinator populations among locations. In summary, the wood anatomy of *Rhododendron* is the underlying attribute that has lead to high resource use efficiency, a strong competitive ability, a wide diversity of leaf functional traits and the many characteristics of flowers..

## **References cited**

- Bao, Y., and E.T. Nilsen. 1988. The ecophysiological significance of leaf movements in *Rhododendron maximum* L. *Ecology*. 69: 15781587
- Beier, C.M., J.L. Horton, J.F. Walker, B.D. Clinton, and E.T. Nilsen. 2005. Carbon limitation leads to suppression of first year Oak seedlings beneath evergreen understory shrubs in Southern Appalachian hardwood forests. *Plant Ecology* 176: 131-142

- Cai, Y.F., S.F. Li, W.J. Xie, and J. Song. 2014. How do leaf anatomies and photosynthesis of three *Rhododendron* species relate to their natural environments? *Botanical Studies* 55: 1-9.
- Cordero, R.A., and E.T. Nilsen. 2002. Effects of summer drought and winter freezing on stem hydraulic conductivity of *Rhododendron* species from contrasting climates. *Tree Physiology* 22: 919-928.
- Filella, I., and J. Peñuelas. 1999. Altitudinal differences in UV absorbance, UV reflectance and related morphological traits of *Quercus ilex* and *Rhododendron ferrugineum* in the Mediterranean region. *Plant Ecology* 145: 157-165.
- Horton, J.L., B.D. Clinton, J.F. Walker, C.M. Beier C.M., and E.T. Nilsen. 2009. Variation in soil and forest floor characteristics along gradients of ericaceous, evergreen shrub cover in the southern Appalachians. *Castanea* 74: 340-352
- Larcher, W. 1995. Physiological Plant Ecology. Ecophysiology and Stress Physiology of functional groups. Third Edition. Springer Verlag, New York, USA.
- Lipp, C.C., and E.T. Nilsen. 1997. The impact of sub-canopy light environment on the hydraulic vulnerability of *Rhododendron maximum*, to freeze-thaw and drought. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 20: 1264-1272
- Lipscomb, M.V., and E.T. Nilsen. 1990. Environmental and physiological factors influencing the natural distribution of evergreen and deciduous, Ericaceous shrubs on North and South facing slopes of the southern Appalachian mountains. I. Irradiance responses. *American Journal of Botany* 77: 108115
- Ma, Y., J. Nielsen, D.F. Chamberlain, X. Li, and W. Sun. 2014. The conservation of *Rhododendrons* is of greater urgency than has been previously acknowledged in China. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 22: 3149-3154.
- Neuner, G., D. Ambach, and K. Aichner. 1999. Impact of snow cover on photoinhibition and winter desiccation in evergreen *Rhododendron ferrugineum* leaves during subalpine winter. *Tree Physiology* 19: 725-732.
- Nilsen, E.T. 1985. Seasonal and diurnal leaf movements of *Rhododendron maximum* L. in contrasting irradiance environments. *Oecologia* 65: 296302.
- Nilsen, E.T. 1986. Quantitative phenology and leaf survivorship of *Rhododendron maximum* L. in contrasting irradiance environments of the Appalachian mountains. *American Journal of Botany* 73: 822831.
- Nilsen, E.T. 1987. The influence of temperature and water relations components on leaf movements in *Rhododendron maximum*. *Plant Physiology* 83: 607612.
- Nilsen, E.T. 1991. The relationship between freezing tolerance and thermotropic leaf movement in five *Rhododendron* species. *Oecologia* 87: 6371.
- Nilsen, E.T. 1992. Thermonastic leaf movements: A synthesis of research with *Rhododendron*. *The Botanical Journal of the Linnean Society* 110: 205-233.
- Nilsen, E.T. 2011. Linkage of valuable traits from *R. saxifragoides* in complex hybrids.

- J. American Rhodo. Soc.* 66: 9-16.
- Nilsen, E.T., R. Arora and M. Upmanyu. 2014. Thermonastic leaf movements in *Rhododendron* during freeze-thaw events: Patterns, functional significances, and causes. *Environmental and Experimental Botany* 106: 34-43.
- Nilsen, E.T., and Y. Bao. 1987. The influence of age, season, and microclimate on the photochemistry of *Rhododendron maximum*. I: Chlorophylls. *Photosynthetica* 1: 535542.
- Nilsen, E.T., and D.M Orcutt. 1996. The physiology of Plants Under Stress: Abiotic factors. Wiley Interscience, New York.
- Nilsen, E.T., and S.E. Scheckler. 2003. A unique “giant” cell type in leaves of Vireyas. *J. American Rhodo. Soc.* 57: 6-11.
- Nilsen, E. T., M. R. Sharifi, and P. W. Rundel. 1987. Leaf dynamics in an evergreen and a deciduous species with evenaged leaf cohorts from different environments. *American Midland Naturalist* 118: 4655.
- Nilsen, E.T., D.A. Stetler, and C.A. Gassman. 1988. The influence of age and microclimate on the photochemistry of *Rhododendron maximum* leaves II. Chloroplast structure and photosynthetic light response. *American Journal of Botany* 75: 15261534.
- Nilsen, E.T., and A. Tolbert. 1993. Does winter leaf curling confer cold stress tolerance in *Rhododendrons*. *Journal of The American Rhododendron Society* 47: 98-104.
- Nilsen, E.T., and T. Tulyanon. 2015. An update on the diversity and functional significance of scales in section Schistanthe. *J. American Rhodo. Soc.* 69: 187-193.
- Nilsen, E.T., D.W. Webb, and A. Bao. 2014. The function of foliar scales in water conservation: an evaluation using tropical-mountain, evergreen shrubs of the species *Rhododendron* in section *Schistanthe* (Ericaceae) *Australian Journal of Botany* 62: 403-416.
- Nobel, P.S. 1991. Physiochemical and Environmental plant physiology. Academic Press, San Diego, USA.
- Noshiro, S., M. Suzuki, M., and H. Ohba. 1995. Ecological wood anatomy of Nepalese *Rhododendron* (Ericaceae), 1, Interspecific variation. *Journal of Plant Research* 108: 1-9.
- Peng, Y.H., R. Arora, G.W. Li, X. Wang, and A. Fessehaie. 2008. *Rhododendron catawbiense* plasma membrane intrinsic proteins are aquaporins, and their over-expression compromises constitutive freezing tolerance and cold acclimation ability of transgenic *Arabidopsis* plants. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 31: 1275-1289.
- Pornon, A., and T. Lamaze. 2017. Nitrogen resorption and photosynthetic activity over leaf life span in an evergreen shrub, *Rhododendron ferrugineum*, in a subalpine environment. *New Phytologist* 175: 301-310.

- Pockman, W.T. 2014. Freezing regime and trade-offs with water transport efficiency generate variation in xylem structure across diploid populations of *Larrea* sp. (zygophyllaceae). *American Journal of Botany* 101: 598-607.
- Russell, R.B., T.T. Lei, and E.T. Nilsen. 2009. Freezing induced leaf movements and their potential implications to early spring carbon gain: *Rhododendron maximum* L. (Ericaceae) as exemplar. *Functional Ecology* 23: 463-471.
- Rhuland, C.T., and T.A. Day. 1996. Changes in UV-B radiation screening effectiveness with leaf age in *Rhododendron maximum*. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 19: 740-746.
- Taneda, H., D.R. Kandel, A. Ishida, A., and H. Ikeda. 2016. Altitudinal changes in leaf hydraulic conductance across five *Rhododendron* species in eastern Nepal. *Tree Physiology* 36: 1272-1282.
- Tulananda, T. 2016. Vegetative Anatomy of *Rhododendron* with a focus on a comparison between temperate and tropical species. Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Biological Sciences, Virginia Tech.
- Tulyananda, T., and E.T. Nilsen. 2017. The role of idioblasts in leaf water relations of tropical *Rhododendron*. *American Journal of Botany* 104 :828-39.
- Wang, X., Y.H. Peng, J.W. Singer, A. Fessehaie, S.L. Krebs, and R. Arora. 2009. Seasonal changes in photosynthesis, antioxidant systems and ELIP expression in a thermonastic and non-thermonastic *Rhododendron* species: A comparison of photoprotective strategies in overwintering plants. *Plant Science* 177: 607-617.
- Wurzburger, N., and R.L. Hendrick. 2007. *Rhododendron* thickets alter N cycling and soil extracellular enzyme activities in southern Appalachian hardwood forests. *Pedobiologia* 50: 563-576.
- Zamin, T.J., and P. Grogan. 2012. Caribou exclusion during a population low increases deciduous and evergreen shrub species biomass and nitrogen pools in low Arctic tundra. *The Journal of Ecology* 101: 671-683.
- Zhang, Q., M. Shao, X. Jia, and X. Wei. 2017. Relationship of climatic and forest factors to drought- and heat-induced tree mortality. PLOS ONE: 12: e0169770.

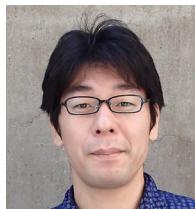
## Section: Physiological Ecology

### Chapter 4

# Altitudinal Trends of Efficiency and Stability of Water Transport in the Stems and Leaves of Nepalese *Rhododendron* Species, Based on Morphological Traits

Haruhiko Taneda

Department of Biological Sciences  
The University of Tokyo



Shuichi Noshiro

Center for Obsidian and Lithic Studies  
Meiji University

H. Taneda

S. Noshiro

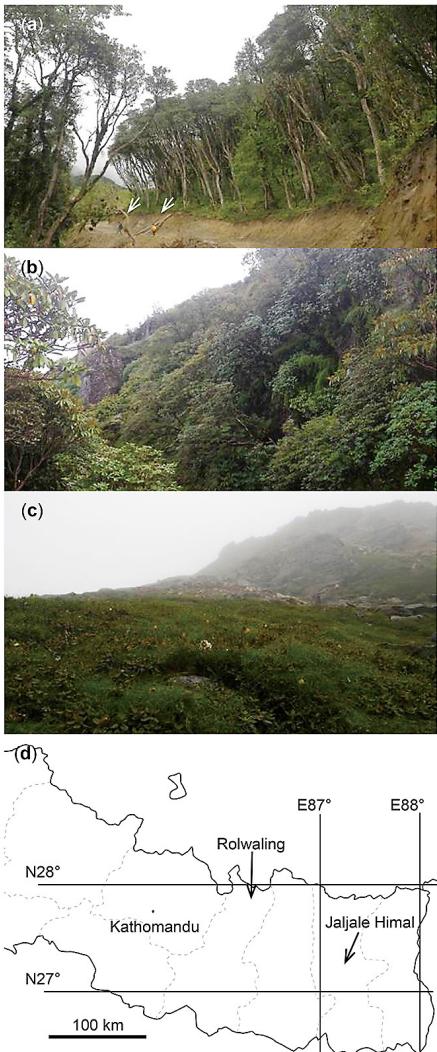
## 1. Introduction

### 1-1. Geographical distribution of Nepalese *Rhododendron*

Over 30 *Rhododendron* species occur in Nepal (Noshiro 1997, Yoshida 2005), where climate ranges from humid in the eastern part of the country to xeric in its western part, and with altitude from tropical to alpine tundra (Singh and Singh 1987). Growing abundantly in many places, rhododendrons are familiar to Nepalese people, and the red color of *R. arboreum*, the national flower of Nepal, is used as the background color of the Nepalese national flag (see [http://www.easynepalotyping.com/nepali\\_flag](http://www.easynepalotyping.com/nepali_flag)). Nepalese *Rhododendron* species occur more densely in eastern mesic regions and range from 1500 (4950 ft) to 5000 m (16,500 ft) in altitude (Noshiro 1997). In the eastern region, the dominant vegetation changes distinctively with altitude: evergreen broad-leaved tree forests dominated by *Quercus* species between 1500 and 2500 m; winter deciduous tree forest (*Acer-Magnolia* forest) between 2500 and 3000 m; mixed forest of evergreen conifers and deciduous broad-leaved trees (*Abies-Betula* forest) between 3000 m and 4000 m; timber line around 3800–4000 m; alpine mat vegetation above 4200 m (Singh and Singh 1987, Noshiro 1997). The Nepalese rhododendron species occur at all of

these vegetation zones as canopy trees, understory shrubs, and as prostrate alpine shrubs at open sites (Figure 1a–c, de Milleville 2001, Noshiro 1997, Yoshida 2005). Each species has a wide altitudinal habitat range, between 500 and 1000 m. Notably, some species, such as *Rhododendron arboreum* and *R. lepidotum*, occur over 2000 m altitudinal difference (Noshiro 1997).

The diversifications of the Nepalese *Rhododendron* species and habitats are associated with adaptations to different altitudinal environments. As altitude increases, air temperature decreases by 5–6°C (9–11° F) per 1000 m, growing period shortens, and soil temperature decreases, but precipitation and relative humidity increase (Jump *et al.* 2009, Körner 2003). Generally, plant growth is sensitive to changes in temperature and moisture, and plants can change their morphological and physiological properties to acclimate to respective altitudinal conditions (e.g., leaf nitrogen content, stomatal density, shoot to root ratio (Körner 2003); timing of bud break (Vitasse *et al.* 2009); acquirement of freezing resistance (Ishizuka *et al.* 2015)). Plant water use is also an important factor in altitudinal acclimation (Mayr and Charra-Vaskou 2007, Petit *et al.* 2011, Smith *et al.* 2003). However, few studies have addressed altitudinal change in the hydraulic properties of plants. Because Nepalese *Rhododendron* species are found in a wide range of



**Fig. 1.** Study sites and vegetation of *Rhododendron* trees and shrubs at different altitudes.. (a) Forest at ca. 2600 m where *Rhododendron arboreum* subsp. *cinnamomeum* over 10 m tall dominated. Arrows: two people walking along the trail. (b) Subtree forest comprising *R. arboreum*, *R. campanulatum*, *R. hodgsonii*, and *R. thomsonii* with 3-4 m high canopies at ca. 3350 m (c) Slope in alpine tundra covered with *R. anthopogon*, *R. lepidotum*, and *R. setosum* shrubs at ca. 4100 m, and (d) Locations of the study areas in eastern Nepal, Rolwaling and Jaljale.

altitude, they likely show distinctively different water use and water transport properties to adapt to the different soil moisture and atmospheric vapor deficit conditions across elevation.

### **1-2. Plant water transport and adaptation to high altitude**

Water is a vital resource, which is consumed during plant growth as transpiration. During photosynthesis, CO<sub>2</sub> is absorbed from the atmosphere by mesophyll tissues via stomata, and simultaneously water vapor is transpired from leaves (Jones 2013). To assimilate 1 g of carbohydrate, angiosperm trees lose 200–300 g of water from their leaves as transpiration (Fitter and Hay 2002). Transpiration rate from a leaf is determined by the vapor-pressure difference between the atmosphere and the internal space inside a leaf (VPD, or transpiration demand), and by the extent of stomatal opening (stomatal conductance,  $g_s$ ). To compensate for the transpired water and maintain photosynthesis, efficient water transport from the soil to the leaves is required (Jones 2013). Water flow through a plant body is driven by surface tension, generated by evaporation from the surfaces of cell walls inside the leaf internal space. The surface tension pulls on the water column, whose water molecules are connected to each other by hydrogen bonds (cohesion-tension theory, Tyree and Zimmermann 2002). Water moves through vessels or tracheids in the xylem for most of the long distance transport in the plant body, while water passes through parenchyma tissues, including pathways in the cell walls, cytoplasm, and cell membranes for short distances in the roots and leaves. For xylem water transport, the number and diameter of xylem conduits are pivotal traits, because water conductive capacity is proportional to the fourth power of conduit diameter (Tyree and Zimmermann 2002). Due to xylem tension, water in a conduit is in a meta-stable state. If gas bubbles enter into the lumen of a water-filled conduit (an event called xylem cavitation), dysfunction of water transport happens due to a breakage of the connections between the water molecules (Tyree and Zimmermann 2002) [Editors note: xylem embolism is also discussed in this volume by Nilsen]. By contrast, passage of water through cell membranes (in a leaf, for example) is a challenge, and the permeability of the cell membrane is controlled via gene expression and activation by phosphorylation of aquaporins, or cell membrane proteins that provide water channels, in response to the environmental stimuli (reviewed in Maurel *et al.* 2015).

There are two plausible responses of hydraulic properties of leaves and stems to different altitudes. At high altitudinal habitat, low air temperature and high relative humidity greatly reduce transpiration demand, while high stomatal conductance has been reported in plants growing at high altitude (Körner 2003). Therefore, water transport systems with tissues that are less conductive and less

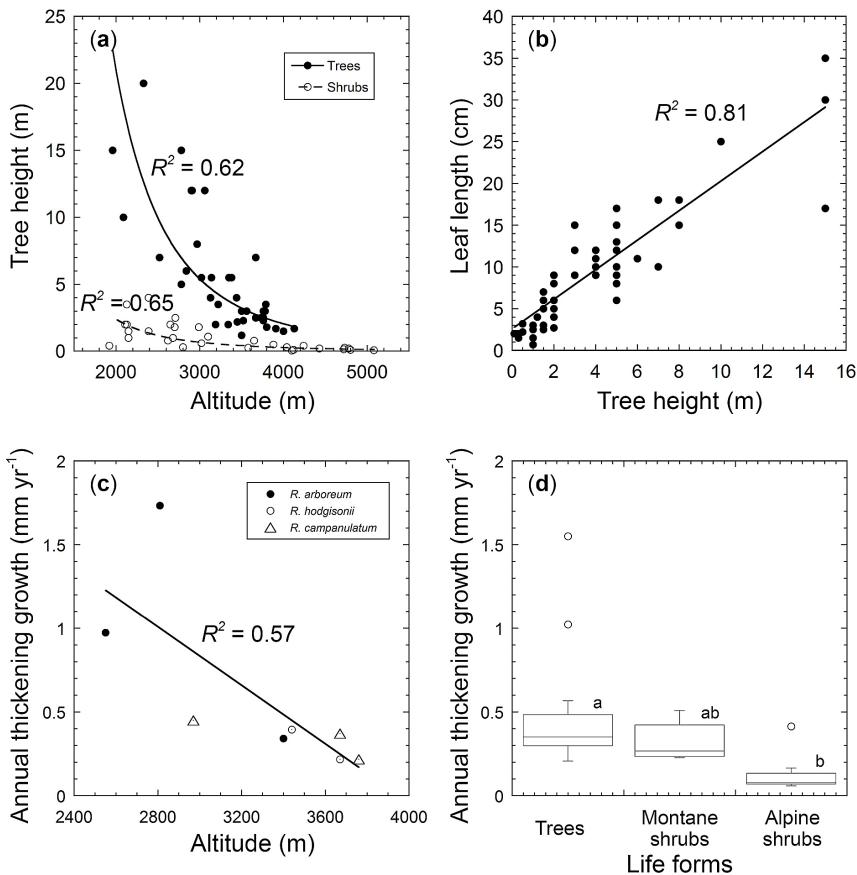
vulnerable to xylem cavitation may be sufficient to compensate for water loss, and be adaptive, at high altitude. On the other hand, the conductive capacity of plant tissues decreases with decreasing temperature. Due to higher viscosity of water at lower temperatures, the conductive capacity of xylem transport can be reduced by 20% as a consequence of decreasing the temperature by 10°C. For water transport through cell membranes, additionally, the conductive capacity decreases by 50 to 70% as the temperature decreases by 10°C (Ionenko *et al.* 2010). Under clear and less windy conditions, leaf temperature and transpiration demand can rapidly raise (Larcher *et al.* 2010). In this situation, strong xylem tension is induced in xylem sap, resulting in catastrophic xylem cavitation and plant death, unless water supply is kept up with transpiration (Tyree and Zimmermann 2002). Thus, *Rhododendron* trees growing at high altitude may have stems and leaves which are both conductive and resistant to xylem cavitation, but at a high carbon cost.

This review aimed to reveal altitudinal trends in the efficiency and stability of water transport in the leaves and stems of rhododendrons growing in eastern Nepal (Jaljale Himal and Rolwaling, Figure 1d). We re-visited our previous studies of anatomy and hydraulic properties of stems and leaves of Nepalese *Rhododendron* and evaluated their hydraulic efficiency and stability using the associated morphological traits that the previous studies have indicated. For stem traits, we used data about interspecific differences among 26 *Rhododendron* species (Noshiro *et al.* 1995), intraspecific differences within *R. arboreum* (Noshiro and Suzuki 1995) and ontogenetic analyses of the stem xylem of 15 species (Noshiro and Suzuki 2001). These data were collected from one to three cores of stem xylem at breast height or at the stem base of aboveground parts, if plants were short. Leaf traits were measured on five *Rhododendron* species growing between 2750 m and 4700 m in altitude (Taneda *et al.* 2016). The leaves were collected from the highest and lowest limits of the altitudinal distribution of each species. The present review categorized the *Rhododendron* species into three groups: trees, montane shrubs, and alpine shrubs. Montane and alpine shrubs are defined as *Rhododendron* shrubs growing below and above 3800 m in altitude, respectively. We also add new data, evaluating the hydraulic properties among the three life forms. Based on these results, we assessed the following questions: (1) what plant traits change with altitude?; (2) Is efficiency and stability of stem water transport high in *Rhododendron* species growing at high altitude?; (3) Is efficiency and stability of leaf water transport high in *Rhododendron* species growing at high altitude?; (4) What is the inter-specific difference in water conductive capacity through whole plant?

## **2. Altitudinal changes in species' morphology**

Plant height changed with altitude for 26 *Rhododendron* species (Fig. 2a). For tree species, plant height sharply decreased with increasing altitude, to about 2 m around timber line. As shown in Fig. 1, notably, the tree *Rhododendron* species constituted the canopy of the forest. Decreased plant height with altitude was also found in other canopy species besides rhododendrons (Singh and Singh 1987). *R. arboreum* trees that occurred from 1500 m to 4000 m decreased their height with increasing altitude (Noshiro and Suzuki 1995). Likewise, plant height decreased with increasing altitude in *Rhododendron* shrubs. The change in plant height is probably due to adaptation to physical load by wind and snow, because the canopy height was nearly uniform (Smith et al. 2003). Notably, leaf length increased with increasing tree height (Fig. 2b). Among 51 *Rhododendron* species found in eastern Nepal, Tibet and Bhutan (Yoshida 2005), the relationship between leaf length and plant height was very tight. Leaf size is related to branching pattern (Westoby et al. 2002). Large leaves are found in less branched trees, and these are often fast-growing or early-successional species. Thus, this tight correlation implies that the plant growth pattern is related to plant height in Nepalese rhododendrons.

Another plant trait changing with altitude is the rate of stem radial growth. The annual radial growth of rhododendrons estimated from Noshiro and Suzuki (2001) decreased with increasing altitude of their habitat (Fig. 2c). Cambial activity was hindered by low air temperature, which limited developmental activity and the duration of stem thickening at high altitudes (Li et al. 2016, Petit et al. 2011). Between species, the annual radial growth of alpine shrub species was markedly lower than that of species growing at lower altitudes (Fig. 2d). An extremely small annual growth rate of 0.1 to 0.3 mm/yr was also observed in *R. aganniphum*, occurring at 4300–4600 m on the Tibetan Plateau (Li et al. 2016). A thickened stem xylem reinforces its mechanical strength and enhances its water conductive capacity, leading to an increased leaf forage area and carbon gain (Taneda and Tateno 2004). The extremely small annual radial growth of alpine rhododendron shrubs places them at increased risk of growth inhibition (Petit et al. 2011). The cambial activity of *R. aganniphum* is only limited at a minimum air temperature of about 2°C. This minimal growth threshold temperature of alpine rhododendrons is lower than that of evergreen conifers occurring around the timberline (4–5°C; Boulouf et al. 2012). The narrow annual growth rings of alpine rhododendrons have been suggested to be the result of adaptation to severe alpine climate conditions (Li et al. 2016).



**Fig. 2.** Altitudinal changes in life form and radial thickening growth of stems in *Rhododendron* plants. (a) Relationship between tree height and growing altitude. (b) Relationship between leaf length and tree height. (c) Relationship between annual radial growth of stems and growing altitude. (d) Difference in annual radial growth of stems between three different habitats and life forms. Data are fitted to power functions in (a), and linear functions in (b) and (c). Boxes in (d) represent the 50th percentile of the data set, and the lines represent the median. Bars of both sides of the box represent  $1.5 \times$  inter quartile range. Letters beside boxes in (d) represent significant difference at  $P < 0.05$  by ANOVA and Tukey's multiple comparison test.

### 3. Stem hydraulic properties.

#### 3-1. Efficiency of water transport in stems

A stem functions as the long distance water transport pathway from the roots to the leaves. The hydraulic performance of the stem depends strongly on the anatomical features of xylem (Tyree and Zimmermann 2002), with vessel diameter and the number of vessels (i.e., vessel density) particularly important for xylem water transport. The stem xylem of rhododendrons is diffuse porous, i.e. contains

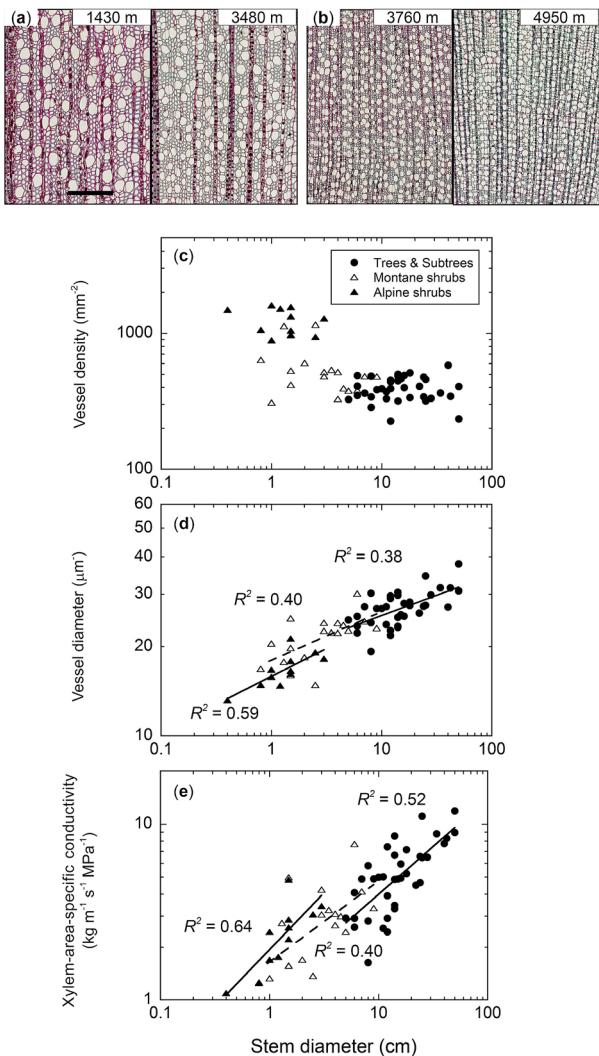
evenly distributed vessels of similar size throughout an annual ring (Figs. 3a, b). Across the 26 species, Noshiro *et al.* (1995) found a tight correlation of vessel diameter and density with stem diameter, but not with growing altitude. This inter-specific relationship suggests that ontogenetic constraints are more important for xylem vessel development than are the influences of the environmental at different altitudes.

The present review re-analyzed this relationship separately for the three life forms (trees, montane shrubs and alpine shrubs). Vessel diameter was correlated positively with stem diameter for all three life forms (Fig. 3c), and there were no significant differences among the three relationships. By contrast, no significant correlations of vessel density with stem diameter were detected, for any of the three groups (Fig. 3d). Notably, vessel density of alpine *Rhododendron* shrubs was apparently larger than for the other two life forms (mean  $\pm$  1 s.e. of vessel density:  $397 \pm 12.9$ ,  $593 \pm 58.1$  and  $1240 \pm 77.7$  for trees, montane shrubs and alpine shrubs, respectively). These results suggest that the xylem vessel density of alpine shrubs was determined in an ontogenetic manner differently from the other two groups, while vessel diameter was produced by a common ontogenetic constraint.

According to the laws of hydrodynamics, water conductivity on a xylem area basis ( $k_x$ ) is calculated using vessel diameter and density (Tyree and Zimmermann 2002), normalized by stem segment length and conductive xylem area, allowing inter-specific comparison. In all three groups  $k_x$  was correlated with stem diameter, but the relationship of alpine rhododendrons differed significantly from those of rhododendrons growing at lower altitude (Fig. 3e). The regression line of alpine species was located above those of the other two groups, indicating that an alpine stem has a higher water transport capacity for a given stem diameter. At high-altitude habitats, freeze-thaw induced cavitation likely occurs through late autumn to winter and to early spring seasons (see next paragraphs for details), and so it seems reasonable that the higher stem water transport capacity of alpine rhododendrons is achieved by a higher vessel density in a stem, rather than wider vessels, which are susceptible to freeze-thaw induced cavitation.

### **3-2. Stability of water transport in stems**

Stability of stem water transport is associated with higher resistance to xylem cavitation. Two abiotic stresses induce cavitation, or the entry of air bubbles into functional vessels. One is drought stress, and another is freeze-thaw cycles. Strong xylem tension in a drought-stressed plant can pull air into functional, water-filled conduits from adjacent air-filled conduits, through nanoscale pores on pit membranes (air-seeding, Choat *et al.* 2008). The threshold pressure of air entry is inversely proportional to the pore dimension in pit membranes (Tyree and

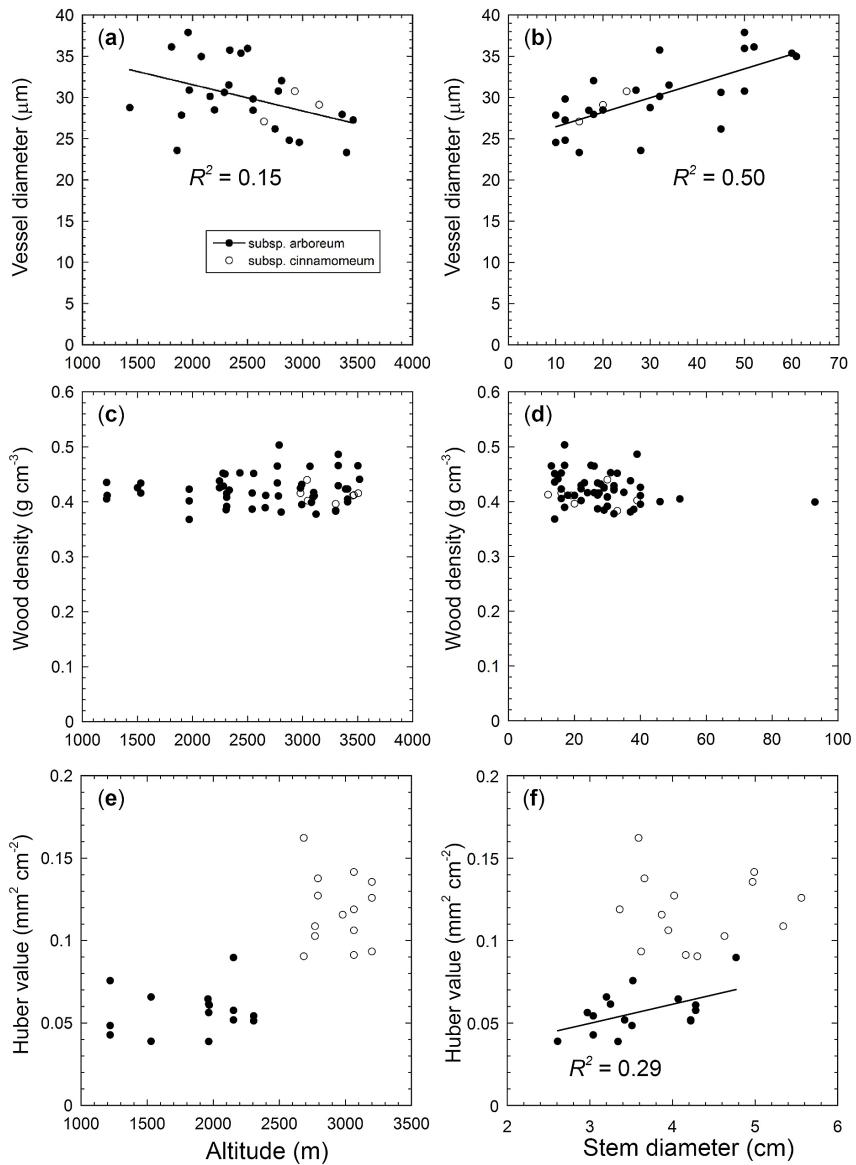


**Fig. 3.** Inter-specific variations in xylem anatomy and water conductive capacity of stem xylem (hydraulic conductivity) in rhododendrons. (a) Cross sections of *R. arboreum* stem xylem. (b) Cross sections of *R. anthopogon* stem xylem. (c) Relationship between vessel density and stem diameter among three life forms of rhododendrons. (d) Relationship between vessel diameter and stem diameter among three life forms of rhododendrons. (e) Relationship between xylem-area-specific conductivity and stem diameter among three life forms of rhododendrons. Closed circles solid line, and open and closed triangles in (c) - (e) represent tree species, montane shrub species, and alpine shrubs, respectively. Data in (d) and (e) are fitted to power functions. The fitted relationships in (d) are not different among the three life forms by ANCOVA test at  $P < 0.05$ . The fitted relationships of the alpine shrubs in (e) are different significant from the tree and subtree species by ANCOVA test at  $P < 0.05$ . Scale bar in (a) is 200  $\mu\text{m}$  and applies also to the three other images.

Zimmerman 2002), because the meniscus between water in a functional vessel and an air-filled vessel is retained by the surface tension of water. In addition to drought stress, freeze-thaw cycles of stem xylem sap also induce xylem cavitation (Sevanto *et al.* 2012, Sperry *et al.* 1994). In freezing of the stem xylem, gas bubbles appear in xylem sap due to their lower solubility at lower temperatures. After the thawing of stem xylem, gas bubbles expand under strong xylem tension, creating a large air volume that can fill a vessel lumen. Resistance to xylem cavitation can be determined by periodic measurements of stem conductivity and xylem tension in a drying stem. Resistant stem xylem retains its conductivity under strong xylem tension. The point of 50% loss of stem hydraulic conductivity ( $P_{50}$ ) is a common index of resistance to xylem cavitation. Previous studies have indicated that large conduit diameter is negatively related to resistance to xylem cavitation, whether induced by drought stress or freeze-thaw cycles (Christman *et al.* 2012; Hacke *et al.* 2006; Sperry *et al.* 1994; Taneda and Tateno 2005). The other factor, wood xylem density, is empirically positively related to resistance to drought-induced cavitation across many plant species (Hacke *et al.* 2001).

In rhododendrons, resistance to xylem cavitation has been measured in *R. macrophyllum* (Cordero and Nilsen 2002, Lipp and Nilsen 1997), *R. maximum* and *R. catawbiense* (Cordero and Nilsen 2002), and *R. ferrugineum*, *R. hirsutum*, and their hybrid (*R. ×intermedium*) (Mayr *et al.* 2010). The  $P_{50}$  values ranged between -1.75 MPa and -3.24 MPa, which would be considered moderate resistance compared to other angiosperms. These values were associated with drought conditions at the growing sites, but the correlation with growing altitude has not been reported. Lipp and Nilsen (1997) and Cordero and Nilsen (2002) have reported xylem dysfunction in winter, and severe inhibition in water transport was found in *R. catawbiense*, and in sunny plants of *R. macrophyllum* having vessels with wider diameters.

Because  $P_{50}$  data are not available for Nepalese rhododendrons, hydraulic stability was evaluated using their morphological traits. Vessel diameter was small in rhododendrons growing at high altitude, both for tree and shrub species (Fig. 2a). Thus, alpine *Rhododendron* shrubs should be more resistant to xylem cavitation induced by both drought stress and freeze-thaw cycles, at least in a basal part of stems. Intra-specific trends in the stability of xylem water transport were assessed in *R. arboreum* growing in eastern Nepal, classified into three subspecies, subsp. *arboreum*, subsp. *cinnamomeum*, and subsp. *roseum*. Vessel diameter of *R. arboreum* subsp. *arboreum* and subsp. *cinnamomeum* calculated from data of Noshiro and Suzuki (1995) decreased with increasing growing altitude, as in inter-specific variation (Figs. 4a). However, wood density measured from wood



**Fig. 4.** Altitudinal changes in stem morphological traits related to resistance to xylem cavitation among two subspecies of *R. arboreum*. (a) Relationship between mean vessel diameter and growing altitude. (b) Relationship between mean vessel diameter and stem diameter. (c) Relationship between wood density and the growing altitude. (d) Relationship between wood density and stem diameter. (e) Relationship between Huber value and growing altitude. (f) Relationship between Huber value and stem diameter. Closed and open circles in (a) – (f) represent subsp. *arboreum* and subsp. *cinnamomeum*, respectively. Data in (a), (b) and (f) are fitted to linear regressions.

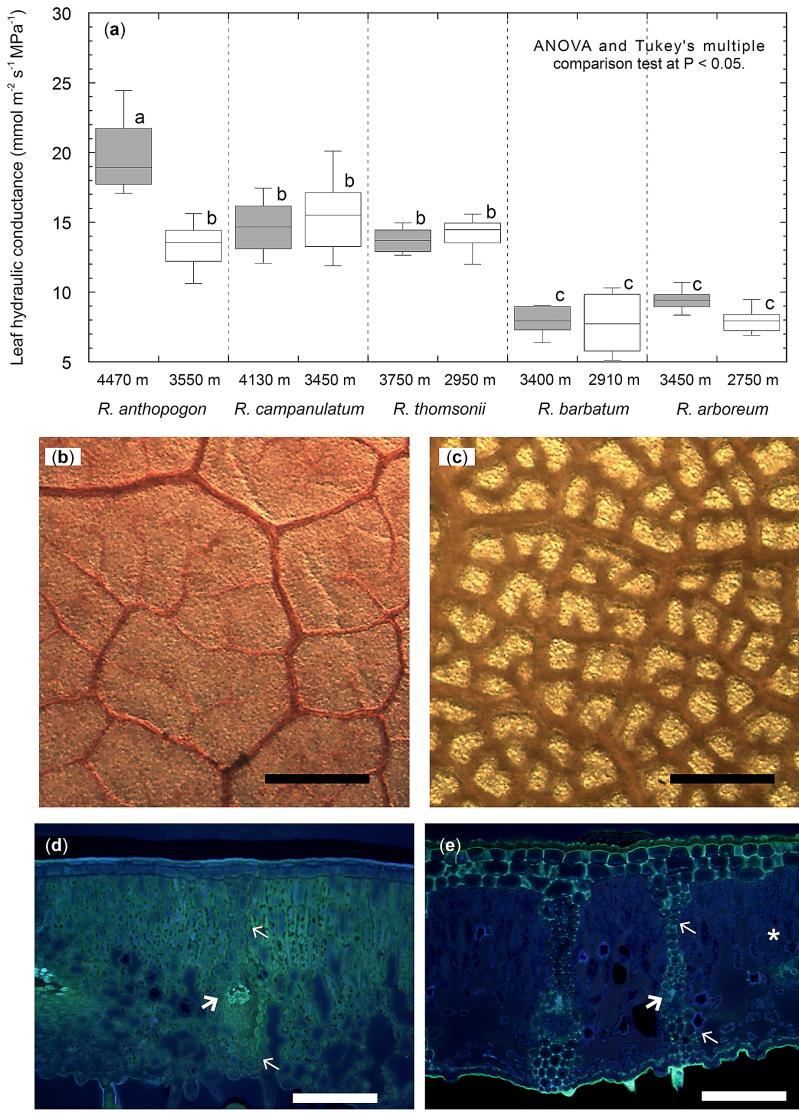
cores collected by a field trip to Rolwaling in 2007 was correlated neither with altitude nor stem diameter (Figs. 4c, d).

In addition, the Huber value was measured using specimens in the museum herbarium of the University of Tokyo, collected by the field trip to Rolwaling in 2007. The Huber value is an index of the water balance of a shoot, and is a ratio of the stem cross-sectional area at the current year shoot (water supply capacity) and the sum of the distal leaf area (potential water loss). The leaf area was calculated as a product of the length and width of the leaf lamina. The Huber value of a current-year shoot was seemingly correlated positively with altitude (Fig. 4e), but was significantly higher in subsp. *cinnamomeum* growing at higher altitudes than in subsp. *arboreum* growing at lower altitudes. Within subspecies, few correlations of the Huber value with growing altitude or stem diameter were found, except for the correlation between Huber value and stem diameter in subsp. *arboreum* (Figs. 4e, f). A high Huber value was linked to a smaller leaf area within a shoot, resulting in lower carbon gain. However, a high Huber value ensures higher stability of water balance in the shoot, because of a higher water-conducting area of xylem relative to the transpiring area of leaves. Positive correlations of Huber value with altitude have been reported in other woody species (Hernandez-Calderon *et al.* 2014). Furthermore, shrubs with small leaves show high Huber values (Tyree and Zimmermann 2002). Thus, the altitudinal trends of Huber value observed in *R. arboreum* may be applicable to inter-specific variations of rhododendrons. As with inter-specific variations, intra-specific trends of *R. arboreum* showed that the morphological traits of xylem and shoots reflect the conservative water use in *Rhododendron* species found at higher altitude.

## 4. Leaf hydraulic properties

### 4-1. Efficiency of water transport in leaves

Within a leaf, water flows first through xylem vessels in a petiole and veins and then from the xylem, through parenchyma tissue, to evaporation sites in mesophyll tissue. Leaf hydraulic resistance, which is inverse to hydraulic conductance ( $K_{leaf}$ ), accounts for 30% of the resistance in the whole plant pathway, suggesting a great impact on plant water use (Sack and Holbrook 2006). Among five rhododendrons occurring at different altitudes (*R. arboreum*: 2750–3450 m; *R. barbatum*: 2900–3400 m; *R. thomsonii*: 2950–3750 m; *R. campanulatum*: 3450–4130 m; and *R. anthopogon*: 3550–4470 m), a significant correlation was found between  $K_{leaf}$  and the growing altitude (Taneda *et al.* 2016), but within a species,  $K_{leaf}$  of plants from higher altitudes was not different from that from lower altitudes, except with *R. anthopogon* (Fig. 5a)



**Fig. 5.** Altitudinal changes in water conductive capacity of leaf (leaf hydraulic conductance) and leaf morphological traits. (a) Box-plot of leaf hydraulic conductance among five *Rhododendron* species from the lowest to the highest altitudinal habitats. Letters beside boxes show significant difference by Tukey's multiple comparison test at  $P < 0.05$ . (b) and (c) Cleared leaf lamina of *R. anthropogon* and *R. arboreum*, respectively. (d) and (e) Thin cross-section of *R. anthropogon* and *R. arboreum* leaves observed with a fluorescent microscope, respectively. Pale blue fluorescence comes from lignified cell walls. Thick and thin arrows in (d) and (e) are vein xylem and the bundle sheath extensions, respectively. Asterisk in (e) represents the highest order vein without bundle sheath extensions. Scale bars in (b) and (c) are 250  $\mu\text{m}$ , and those in (d) and (e) are 100  $\mu\text{m}$  and 200  $\mu\text{m}$ , respectively.

Previous studies reported that vein length per area (VLA) is a key trait to explain inter-specific variation in  $K_{leaf}$  (Brodribb et al. 200; Sack et al. 2013).  $K_{leaf}$  is associated positively with VLA, with higher VLA resulting in a shorter water transport distance through parenchyma tissue with high hydraulic resistance (Brodribb et al. 2007). On the other hand, no significant relationship between  $K_{leaf}$  and VLA was found among the five *Rhododendron* species. Notably, *R. arboreum*, with the highest VLA, showed the lowest  $K_{leaf}$  and *R. anthopogon* with the lowest VLA had the highest  $K_{leaf}$  (Figs. 5bc). Lignification on the bundle sheath cells was the most plausible candidate to constrain the relationship between  $K_{leaf}$  and VLA among the five *Rhododendron* species (Taneda et al. 2016). In *R. arboreum* leaves, bundle sheath extensions developed at all vein orders, except for vein endings, and the cells of bundle sheath and bundle sheath extensions were lignified in the primary walls (Fig. 5d). Unlike the Casparyan band in the endodermis of roots (Enstone et al. 2003, North and Peterson 2005), in the bundle sheath of the veins the primary walls were lignified on all aspects of the cell. Contrastingly, the bundle sheath cells of *R. anthopogon* were not lignified even in the second-order veins, although the bundle sheath extensions developed up to higher-order veins (Fig. 5e). Lignin is a phenolic polymer with a hydrophobic property, and deposits of it fill the space between microfibrils in cell walls (Barros et al. 2015), thus inhibiting water transport. Consequently, although *R. arboreum* showed a high measured VLA, veins irrigating mesophyll cells may be highly limited in their water transport capacity because of the lignification of bundle sheath cells, resulting in a low  $K_{leaf}$  (Ohtsuka et al. 2018, Taneda et al. 2016). *R. barbatum* leaves with a low  $K_{leaf}$  showed the same lignification pattern as *R. arboreum* leaves. In the minor veins of *R. campanulatum* and *R. thomsonii*, lignification was found only in bundle sheath extensions on the abaxial side (Taneda et al. 2016), which are considered as a bypass between xylem veins and the epidermis, where stomata are located. These two species had middle values of  $K_{leaf}$  between *R. arboreum* and *R. anthopogon* from high altitude. The lignification on bundle sheath cells was great negative impact on leaf hydraulics of Nepalese *Rhododendron* species, but the merit of it is still unclear. One is to prevent leaking from the lower-order veins (upstream of leaf water transport), likely resulting in equal supply of water to any parts of a leaf. Another may be the mechanical reinforcement of bundle sheath cells. Lignified cells are solid against external force because of little leaking of water from cells under pressure (Niklas 1992). The positive correlation of  $K_{leaf}$  with altitude is associated with efficient carbon gain at the growing altitude, because a systematic increase in both  $K_{leaf}$ , leaf nitrogen concentration and stomatal pore index (stomatal width<sup>2</sup> × stomatal density, Sack et al. 2003) with the growing altitude were detected (Taneda et al. 2016). Leaf nitrogen concentration is related tightly with the content of Rubisco,

which is an enzyme for CO<sub>2</sub> assimilation (Makino 2003). High leaf nitrogen concentration is linked to a high maximum photosynthetic rate (Evans 1989). Through high stomatal conductance (as estimated by high stomatal pore index) a great amount of CO<sub>2</sub> can be obtained from the atmosphere, supported by high nitrogen availability. High stomatal conductance simultaneously induces a high rate of transpiration from a leaf. Dwarf alpine shrubs growing at a high density and with high transpiration rates can induce a high boundary layer resistance [i.e., a plain canopy of prostrate shrubs (see Fig. 1c) causes less mixing of air space just above the canopy, which impedes further movement of gaseous materials and heat from leaf surfaces]. When leaves received strong irradiance from sun at low latitudes, leaf temperature can rise sharply even in high altitude habitats, resulting in great transpiration demand (Körner 2003, Larcher *et al.* 2010). The substantial loss of water can be compensated for by a high capacity of leaf water transport. The leaves of alpine shrubs are adapted to the harsh alpine environment with an extremely short growing season by being able to continue photosynthesis without temporal stomatal closure at the midday.

#### 4-2. *Stability of water transport in leaves*

A decrease in  $K_{leaf}$  with drought has been reported across a wide range of plant species during the last decade (reviewed in Scoffoni and Sack 2017).  $K_{leaf}$  decreases due to xylem cavitation in leaf vein xylem (Johnson *et al.* 2012, Brodribb *et al.* 2016), reversible collapse of vessels in minor veins (Zhang *et al.* 2016), and shrinkage of the parenchyma cells in the bundle sheath (Scoffoni *et al.* 2017a). To date, two morphological traits have been proposed to determine the risk of leaf vein xylem embolism: leaf area (Scoffoni *et al.* 2011) and the ratio of the thickness of vessel cell walls to the diameter of the vessel lumen (TD ratio, hereafter). High TD values are associated with high strength and resistance to vessel implosion (Blackman *et al.* 2010). A small area leaf with great density of major veins is less susceptible to a decrease in  $K_{leaf}$ . A leaf with a higher TD ratio has more negative  $P_{50}$  values of  $K_{leaf}$  (i.e., more resistant to xylem embolism). Unfortunately, there is little information about the  $P_{50}$  values of *Rhododendron* leaves (except for  $P_{50} = -1.95$  MPa for *R. macrophyllum*, Johnson *et al.* 2012). Thus, the stability of leaf water transport was estimated by comparing leaf area and TD ratio among five *Rhododendron* species (Table 1). Leaf area ranged from 3.55 cm<sup>2</sup> for *R. anthopogon* to 57.6 cm<sup>2</sup> for *R. barbatum*, suggesting that the alpine *R. anthopogon* had the highest stability of leaf water transport. The TD ratio varied between 0.0123 and 0.0235 (Figs. 5a, b). Difference in the TD ratio was well explained by the lumen diameter of vessels, rather than differences in cell wall thickness. As in the case of leaf area, TD ratio was the highest in the alpine *R. anthopogon* growing at 4470

Table 1. Leaf morphological traits related to xylem cavitation

Species	Altitude (m)	Leaf area (cm <sup>2</sup> )	Wall thickness to Span ratio of minor vein	Estimated P <sub>50</sub> (MPa)	Hydraulic vessel diameter of midrib xylem (mm)
<i>R. anthopogon</i>	4470	3.86 (0.089)	0.0235	-6.18	8.44 (0.30)
<i>R. anthopogon</i>	3550	3.55 (0.223)	0.0206	-4.76	7.20 (0.25)
<i>R. campanulatum</i>	4130	36.4 (1.34)	0.0131	-3.02	15.5 (0.64)
<i>R. campanulatum</i>	3450	30.4 (1.67)	0.0123	-2.84	15.0 (0.48)
<i>R. thomsonii</i>	3750	37.1 (1.50)	0.0135	-3.11	13.7 (0.13)
<i>R. thomsonii</i>	2950	29.8 (0.62)	0.0160	-3.70	13.4 (0.31)
<i>R. barbatum</i>	3400	43.3 (1.37)	0.0171	-3.94	14.4 (0.32)
<i>R. barbatum</i>	2900	57.6 (2.80)	0.0131	-3.02	14.9 (0.47)
<i>R. arboreum</i>	3450	41.0 (1.75)	0.0161	-3.72	12.4 (0.32)
<i>R. arboreum</i>	2750	34.0 (1.49)	0.0143	-3.30	10.4 (0.21)

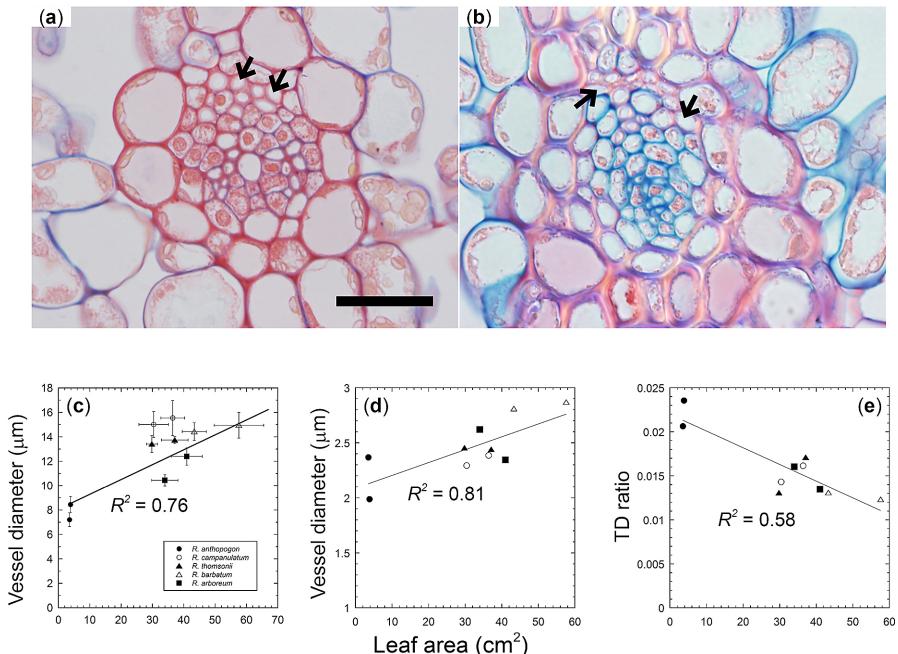
footnote:  $P_{50}$  represents leaf water potential causing 50% loss of leaf hydraulic conductance. Numbers in parentheses are 1 s.e.  $n = 4 - 6$ .

m. The  $P_{50}$  value estimated with a fitted equation by Blackman (2010;  $P_{50} = 230$  TD + 0.748) was about -6 MPa, which is extremely high (Table 1). In addition, X-ray CT observations indicated that resistance to xylem cavitation is associated with the vessel diameter of the midrib vein (Scoffoni *et al.* 2017b). *R. anthopogon* growing at the highest altitudes should also have the highest stability of xylem transport, due to its narrowest diameter of the vessels (Table 1).

All the indices of hydraulic stability were highest in *R. anthopogon* growing at a highest altitude. The diameter of vessels in a leaf vein is ontogenetically dependent on the leaf area (Taneda and Terashima 2012). For the five *Rhododendron* species, variations in the vessel diameter of the midrib and of the minor veins are explained by leaf area (Figs. 6c, d). The high hydraulic stability of *R. anthopogon* might be produced by the ontogenetic constraint, i.e. small leaves attached on small plants had narrow vessels in its leaf venation.

## 5. Efficiency of water transport in the whole-plant pathway

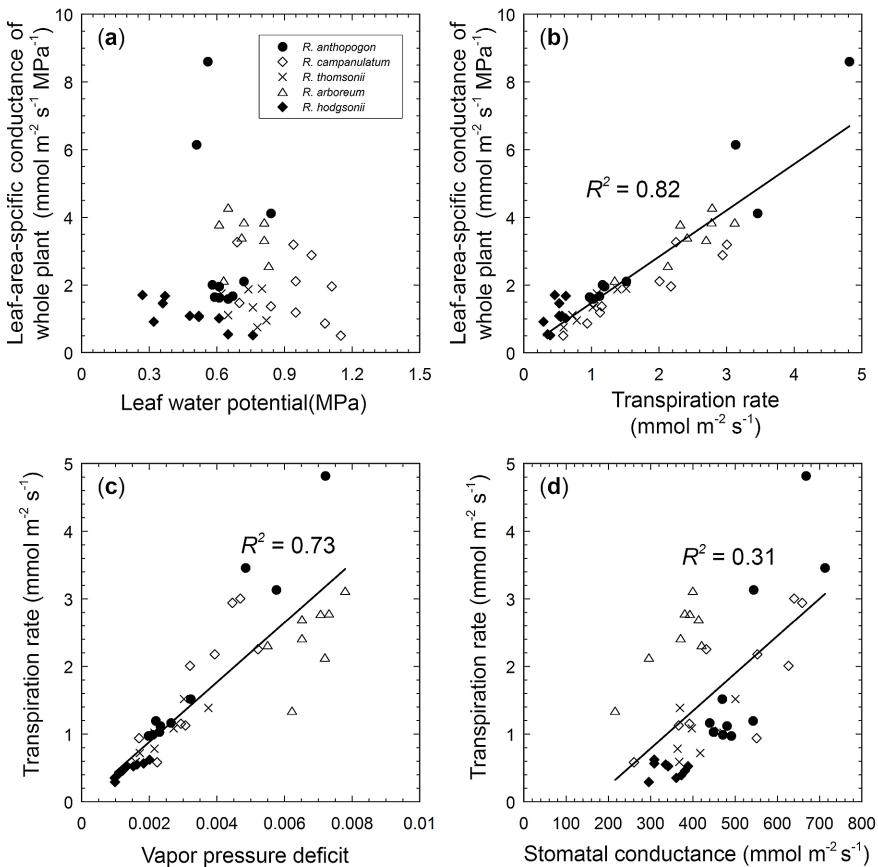
Finally, inter-specific differences in whole plant hydraulic conductance (i.e. transpiration rate on an area basis divided by the difference in water potential between soil and leaf,  $K_w$  hereafter) with altitude are examined. These parameters were measured in the morning. Notably, clear trends were not obtained because  $K_w$  varied four to eight fold for *R. campanulatum* and *R. anthopogon*, respectively. The difference in  $K_w$  was associated with a difference in transpiration rate, rather than with differences in leaf water potential (Figs. 7a, b). The results of ANCOVA analyses indicated that  $K_w$  increases with increasing transpiration rate in the same proportions for all of these *Rhododendron* species, except for *R. campanulatum*.



**Fig. 6.** Leaf morphological traits related to resistance to hydraulic dysfunction under drought stress among five *Rhododendron* species. (a) and (b) Thin cross-sections of vascular bundles in highest-order veins of *R. anthopogon* and *R. arboreum*, respectively. Sections were stained with a mixture of safranin and astrablue solutions. (c) Relationship between the diameter of a midrib-xylem vessel and leaf area. (d) Relationship between the diameter of a highest-order-vein xylem vessel and leaf area. (e) Relationship between the third power of ratio of wall thickness to lumen diameter of a vessel (TD ratio) and leaf area. Data in (c)–(e) are fitted to linear regressions. Arrows in (a) and (b) indicate vessels. Scale bar in (a) is 20 µm and applies to (b). Symbols in (c)–(e) represent different species shown in (c). Bars at each point in (c) show 1 s.e.

The difference in transpiration rate could be explained strongly by vapor pressure deficit (Figs. 7c, d). These results suggest that the increase in  $K_w$  allows a transpiring plant to continue photosynthesis, even under high transpiration demand, without a decrease in leaf water potential inducing stomatal closure or the occurrence of xylem cavitation (Mayr *et al.* 2010).

There are two plausible mechanisms for an increase in  $K_w$  with transpiration rate. Water stored in stems is available with a lower friction than is the water absorbed by roots from soil, although the amount of stored water is limited (Scholz *et al.* 2007). In the morning when the measurements were conducted, the stored water might be available for transpiration from leaves without a large decrease in leaf water potential occurring in response to an increase in



**Fig. 7.** Inter-specific variations in whole-plant water transport capacity (hydraulic conductance) among five *Rhododendron* species. (a) Relationship between whole-plant hydraulic conductance and leaf water potential. (b) Relationship between whole-plant hydraulic conductance and transpiration rate on an area basis. (c) Relationship between transpiration rate and vapor pressure deficit. (d) Relationship between transpiration rate and stomatal conductance. The pooled data of all species are fitted to linear functions. Different symbols represent different species as shown in (a).

transpiration rate. The other mechanism is a short-term response due to the regulation of activity of aquaporins. Water passes through the plasma membrane in the bundle sheath of a leaf (Shatil-Cohen *et al.* 2011), and in the endo- and exodermis in a root (North and Peterson 2005). These tissues have high friction against water transport, so these tissues also include cells with high expressions of aquaporins (Gambetta *et al.* 2013, Shatil-Cohen *et al.* 2011). [Editor's note: Aquaporins are highly-specific membrane-bound channels that provide a low resistance pathway for water to move across cell membranes.] For roots of rice

and popular tree (*Populus trichocarpa* × *P. deltoides*), concomitant increases in root hydraulic conductance and gene expression of aquaporins are detected after the onset of a light period inducing a high rate of transpiration (Sakurai-Ishikawa *et al.* 2011, Laur and Hacke 2013). In addition, Simonin *et al.* (2015) implied the involvement of aquaporins for an increase in  $K_{leaf}$  with increasing transpiration rate. Unfortunately, no previous studies have been conducted on the function of aquaporins in rhododendrons. Further measurements are expected to prove the involvement of aquaporins on whole plant water transport as an adaptation to high-altitude habitats in rhododendrons.

## 6. Conclusions

The present review assessed altitudinal changes in the efficiency and stability of water transport in rhododendrons occurring in eastern Nepal, based on morphological traits of leaf and stem xylem. Due to the humid climate of eastern Nepal, transpiration demand potentially decreases with increasing altitude. A small transpiration demand theoretically allows the low water transport and low stability of plant water transport with a low carbon cost. However, both capacity and stability of water transport were greatest in alpine rhododendrons growing at high altitudes. High vessel density in these alpine plants resulted in a greater capacity of stem water transport than required by rhododendrons from lower altitude habitats. Leaf hydraulic conductance was also greatest in species found growing above the treeline. Xylem traits and shoot morphology suggest more conservative water use by rhododendrons growing at high altitudes. Furthermore, all morphological indices examined indicate alpine rhododendrons had the highest stability, being strongly resistant to a decrease in leaf hydraulic conductance with drying. The tight correlations of these morphological indexes with leaf area imply that ontogenetic constraints cause narrow vessels in small leaved alpine *Rhododendron* species, leading to their high resistance to xylem cavitation. The stability of plant water transport is threatened under severe alpine climate conditions, due to a sharp increase in transpiration demand owing to strong irradiance and high boundary layer resistance, and the freeze-thaw cycle of xylem sap and soil in the winter. Occurrence of xylem cavitation can be a fatal event for alpine plants, because an extremely slow radial growth of stems cannot compensate for the loss of hydraulic conductance by producing new vessels quickly. During a recovery, plants will suffer from water deficiency causing a decrease in carbon gain and in the worst, plant death. Therefore, these hydraulic properties are adaptive to survival in high-altitude habitats.

## Acknowledgement

We greatly thank Mr. Parden Tamang for his technical assistant for several measurements in Jaljale Himal. We also thank Drs. Hiroshi Ikeda, Dr. Sachiko Funayama-Noguchi and Ms Akiko Shimizu for kind helps for the measurements using the specimens of *Rhododendron* in the Museum herbarium of the University of Tokyo. Finally, we appreciate Dr. Juliana Medeiros for giving the opportunity to write this manuscript and helpful comments and advice very much.

## References

- Barros, J., H. Serk, I. Granlund, and E. Pesquet. 2015. The cell biology of lignification in higher plants. *Annals of Botany* 115: 1053-1074.
- Blackman, C.J., T.J. Brodribb, and G.J. Jordan. 2010. Leaf hydraulic vulnerability is related to conduit dimensions and drought resistance across a diverse range of woody angiosperms. *New Phytologist* 188: 1113-1123.
- Boulouf, L.J., A. Deslauriers, and S. Rossi. 2012. Duration of xylogenesis in black spruce lengthened between 1950 and 2010. *Annals of Botany*. 110:1099-1108.
- Brodribb, T.J., D. Bienaimé, and P. Marmottant. 2016. Revealing catastrophic failure of leaf networks under stress. *P Natl Acad Sci USA*. 113:4865-4869.
- Brodribb, T.J., T.S. Feild, and G.J. Jordan. 2007. Leaf maximum photosynthetic rate and venation are linked by hydraulics. *Plant Physiol.* 144:1890-1898.
- Choat, B., A.R. Cobb, and S. Jansen. 2008. Structure and function of bordered pits: new discoveries and impacts on whole-plant hydraulic function. *New Phytologist* 177: 608-625.
- Christman, M.A., J.S. Sperry, and D.D. Smith. 2012. Rare pits, large vessels and extreme vulnerability to cavitation in a ring-porous tree species. *New Phytologist* 193: 713-720.
- Cordero, R.A., and E.T. Nilsen. 2002. Effects of summer drought and winter freezing on stem hydraulic conductivity of *Rhododendron* species from contrasting climates. *Tree Physiology* 22: 919-928.
- de Milleville, R. 2001. *The Rhododendrons of Nepal*. Himal books, Patan Dhoka.
- Evans, J.R. 1989. Photosynthesis and nitrogen relationships in leaves of C-3 plants. *Oecologia* 78: 9-19.
- Fitter, A.H., and R.K.M. Hay. 2002. Environmental Physiology of Plants, third edn. Academic Press, London.
- Gambetta, G.A., J. Fei, T.L. Rost, T. Knipfer, M.A. Matthews, K.A. Shackel, M.A. Walker, and A.J. McElrone. 2013. Water Uptake along the length of grapevine fine roots: Developmental anatomy, tissue-specific aquaporin

- expression, and pathways of water transport. *Plant Physiology* 163: 1254-1265.
- Hacke, U.G., J.S. Sperry, W.T. Pockman, S.D. Davis, and K.A. McCulloch. 2001. Trends in wood density and structure are linked to prevention of xylem implosion by negative pressure. *Oecologia* 126: 457-461.
- Hacke, U.G., J.S. Sperry, J.K. Wheeler, and L. Castro. 2006. Scaling of angiosperm xylem structure with safety and efficiency. *Tree Physiology* 26: 689-701.
- Hernandez-Calderon, E., R. Mendez-Alonso, J. Martinez-Cruz, A. Gonzalez-Rodriguez, and K. Oyama. 2014. Altitudinal changes in tree leaf and stem functional diversity in a semi-tropical mountain. *Journal of Vegetative Science* 25: 955-966.
- Ionenko, I.F., A.V. Anisimov, and N.R. Dautova. 2010. Effect of temperature on water transport through aquaporins. *Biologia Plantarum (Prague)* 54: 488-494.
- Ishizuka, W., K. Ono, T. Hara, and S. Goto. 2015. Use of intraspecific variation in thermal responses for estimating an elevational cline in the timing of cold hardening in a sub-boreal conifer. *Plant Biology* 17: 177-185.
- Johnson, D.M., K.A. McCulloch, D.R. Woodruff, and F.C. Meinzer. 2012. Evidence for xylem embolism as a primary factor in dehydration-induced declines in leaf hydraulic conductance. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 35: 760-769.
- Jones, H.G. 2013. *Plants and microclimate: A quantitative approach to environmental plant physiology*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Jump, A.S., C. Matyas, and J. Penuelas. 2009. The altitude-for-latitude disparity in the range retractions of woody species. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* 24: 694-701
- Körner, C. 2003. *Alpine plant life -Functional plant ecology of high mountain ecosystems*. Springer, Berlin.
- Larcher, W., C. Kainmüller, and J. Wagner. 2010. Survival types of high mountain plants under extreme temperatures. *FLORA* 205: 3-18.
- Laur, J., and U.G. Hacke. 2013. Transpirational demand affects aquaporin expression in poplar roots. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 64: 2283-2293.
- Li, X., S. Rossi, E. Liang, and J.J. Camarero. 2016. Temperature thresholds for the onset of xylogenesis in alpine shrubs on the Tibetan Plateau. *Trees* 30: 2091-2099.
- Lipp, C.C., and E.T. Nilsen. 1997. The impact of subcanopy light environment on the hydraulic vulnerability of *Rhododendron maximum* to freeze-thaw cycles and drought. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 20: 1264-1272.
- Makino, A. 2003. Rubisco and nitrogen relationships in rice: Leaf photosynthesis

- and plant growth. *Soil Science and Plant Nutrition* 49: 319-327.
- Maurel, C., Y. Boursiac, L. Doan-Trung, V. Santoni, Z. Shahzad, and L. Verdoucq. 2015. Aquaporins in plants. *Physiology Review* 95: 1321-1358.
- Mayr, S., B. Beikircher, M.A. Obkircher, and P. Schmid. 2010. Hydraulic plasticity and limitations of alpine *Rhododendron* species. *Oecologia* 164: 321-330.
- Mayr, S., and K. Charra-Vaskou. 2007. Winter at the alpine timberline causes complex within-tree patterns of water potential and embolism in *Picea abies*. *Physiol Plantarum* 131: 131-139.
- Niklas, K. 1992. Plant biomechanics. An engineering approach to plant form and function. The University of Chicago Press.
- North, G.B., and C.A. Peterson. 2005. Water flow in roots: Structural and regulatory features. In: Holbrook, N.M. and M.A. Zwieniecki. (eds) *Vascular transport in plants*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 131-156.
- Noshiro, S. 1997. Distribution maps of *Rhododendron* in Nepal. *Newsletter of Himalayan Botany* 21: 21-28.
- Noshiro, S. and M. Suzuki. 1995. Ecological wood anatomy of Nepalese *Rhododendron* (Ericaceae). 2. Intraspecific variation. *Journal of Plant Research* 108: 217-233.
- Noshiro, S. and M. Suzuki. 2001. Ontogenetic wood anatomy of tree and subtree species of Nepalese *Rhododendron* (Ericaceae) and characterization of shrub species. *American Journal of Botany* 88: 560-569
- Noshiro, S., M. Suzuki, and H. Ohba. 1995. Ecological wood anatomy of Nepalese *Rhododendron* (Ericaceae). 1. Interspecific variation. *Journal of Plant Research* 108: 1-9.
- Ohtsuka, A., L. Sack, and H. Taneda. 2018. Bundle sheath lignification mediates the linkage of leaf hydraulics and venation. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 41: 342-353.
- Petit, G., T. Anfodillo, V. Carraro, F. Grani, and M. Carrer. 2011. Hydraulic constraints limit height growth in trees at high altitude. *New Phytologist* 189: 241-252.
- Sack, L., P.D. Cowan, N. Jaikumar, and N.M. Holbrook. 2003. The 'hydrology' of leaves: co-ordination of structure and function in temperate woody species. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 26: 1343-1356.
- Sack, L. and N.M. Holbrook. 2006. Leaf hydraulics. *Annual Review of Plant Biology* 57: 361-381.
- Sack, L., C. Scoffoni, G.P. John, H. Poorter, C.M. Mason, R. Mendez-Alonso, and L.A. Donovan. 2013. How do leaf veins influence the worldwide leaf economic spectrum? Review and synthesis. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 64: 4053-4080.

- Sakurai-Ishikawa, J., M. Murai-Hatano, H. Hayashi, A. Ahamed, K. Fukushi, T. Matsumoto, and Y. Kitagawa. 2011. Transpiration from shoots triggers diurnal changes in root aquaporin expression. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 34: 1150-1163.
- Scholz, F.G., S.J. Bucci, G. Goldstein, F.C. Meinzer, A.C. Franco, and F. Miralles-Wilhelm. 2007. Biophysical properties and functional significance of stem water storage tissues in Neotropical savanna trees. *Plant, Cell & Environment* 30: 236-248.
- Scoffoni, C., C. Albuquerque, C.R. Brodersen, S.V. Townes, G.P. John, M.K. Bartlett, T.N. Buckley, A.J. McElrone, and L. Sack. 2017a. Outside-xylem vulnerability, not xylem embolism, controls leaf hydraulic decline during dehydration. *Plant Physiology* 173: 1197-1210.
- Scoffoni, C., C. Albuquerque, C.R. Brodersen, S.V. Townes, G.P. John, H. Cochard, T.N. Buckley, A.J. McElrone, and L. Sack. 2017b. Leaf vein xylem conduit diameter influences susceptibility to embolism and hydraulic decline. *New Phytologist* 213: 1076-1092.
- Scoffoni, C., M. Rawls, A. McKown, H. Cochard, and L. Sack. 2011. Decline of leaf hydraulic conductance with dehydration: Relationship to leaf size and venation architecture. *Plant Physiology* 156: 832-843.
- Scoffoni, C. and L. Sack. 2017. The causes and consequences of leaf hydraulic decline with dehydration. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 68: 4479-4496.
- Sevanto, S., N.M. Holbrook, and M.C. Ball. 2012. Freeze/thaw-induced embolism: probability of critical bubble formation depends on speed of ice formation. *Frontiers in Plant Science* 3: 107.
- Shatil-Cohen, A., Z. Attia, and M. Moshelion. 2011. Bundle-sheath cell regulation of xylem-mesophyll water transport via aquaporins under drought stress: a target of xylem-borne ABA? *Plant Journal* 67: 72-80.
- Simonin, K.A., E. Burns, B. Choat, M.M. Barbour, T.E. Dawson, and P.J. Franks. 2015. Increasing leaf hydraulic conductance with transpiration rate minimizes the water potential drawdown from stem to leaf. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 66: 1303-1315.
- Singh, J.S., and S.P. Singh. 1987. Forest vegetation of the Himalaya. *Botanical Review* 53: 80-192.
- Smith, W.K., M.J. Germino, T.E. Hancock, and D.M. Johnson. 2003. Another perspective on altitudinal limits of alpine timberlines. *Tree Physiology* 23: 1101-1112.
- Sperry, J.S., K.L. Nichols, J.E.M. Sullivan, and S.E. Eastlack. 1994. Xylem embolism in ring-porous, diffuse-porous, and coniferous trees of northern Utah and interior Alaska. *Ecology* 75: 1736-1752.

- Taneda, H., D. Kandel, A. Ishida, and H. Ikeda. 2016. Altitudinal changes in leaf hydraulic conductance across five *Rhododendron* species in eastern Nepal. *Tree Physiology* 36: 1272-1282.
- Taneda, H. and M. Tateno. 2005. Hydraulic conductivity, photosynthesis and leaf water balance in six evergreen woody species from fall to winter. *Tree Physiology* 25:299-306.
- Taneda, H. and M. Tateno. 2004. The criteria for biomass partitioning of the current shoot: Water transport versus mechanical support. *American Journal of Botany* 91: 1949-1959.
- Taneda, H. and I. Terashima. 2012. Co-ordinated development of the leaf midrib xylem with the lamina in *Nicotiana tabacum*. *Annals of Botany* 110: 35-45.
- Tyree, M.T. and H.M. Zimmermann. 2002. *Xylem structure and the ascent of sap*. Springer, Berlin.
- Vitasse, Y., S. Delzon, C. Bresson, R. Michalet, and A. Kremer. 2009. Altitudinal differentiation in growth and phenology among populations of temperate-zone tree species growing in a common garden. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 39: 1259-1269.
- Westoby, M., D.S. Falster, A.T. Moles, P.A. Vesk, and J.J. Wright. 2002. Plant ecological strategies: Some leading dimensions of variation between species. *Annu Rev Ecol Syst.* 33:125-59.
- Yoshida, T. 2005. *Himalayan plants illustrated*. YAMA-KEI publishers Co., Ltd., Tokyo. (In Japanese).
- Zhang, Y.J., F.E. Rockwell, A.C. Graham, T. Alexander, and N.M. Holbrook. 2016. Reversible leaf xylem collapse: A potential “circuit breaker” against cavitation. *Plant Physiology* 172: 2261-2274.

## **Section: Evolutionary Ecology**

### **Chapter 5**

# **The Unique Value of Genus *Rhododendron* for Investigating the Evolutionary Ecology of Root-microbe Interactions**

**Juliana S. Medeiros, Yu Liu and Jean H. Burns**  
The Holden Arboretum  
Kirtland, OH, USA



J. Medeiros



Y. Liu



J.H. Burns

### **Introduction**

Rhododendrons are quite famous for their diverse leaf forms and floral displays, but much less is known about how root characteristics might vary across the genus. Here we describe some physiological, ecological and evolutionary aspects of roots, and we relate this to recent work showing that the genus *Rhododendron* has a high root diversity. We discuss the relative influences of evolutionary history and current climate on root traits, and the fundamental differences across deciduous and evergreen *Rhododendron* clades in their reliance on improved foraging scale (i.e., exploring a larger area) versus foraging precision (i.e., intensively exploiting a smaller area) to manifest rapid resource uptake. In addition, we highlight the close associations between *Rhododendron* roots and a wide diversity of soil microbes, which can help or hinder plant growth, and which likely influence *Rhododendron* root morphology, species climate preferences and niche partitioning of co-occurring species. Finally, we suggest that this multi-dimensional diversity within *Rhododendron* has the potential to provide unique insight into important, big-picture questions concerning the evolutionary ecology of roots in general and their associated microbes.

### **The functional and ecological aspects of roots and their associated microbes**

Root systems facilitate the acquisition of nutrients and water from soil, stabilize the

soil matrix, and anchor plants to a fixed position in the soil (Den Herder *et al.* 2010). Root traits are closely tied to plant performance (Reich *et al.* 1998) and environmental factors like water availability (Larson and Funk 2016), so root function likely influences the plant niche, or the set of conditions where a population can persist (Figure 1). Root diversity across climate gradients is often cited as evidence that root traits can evolve, and that they represent important adaptations to climate. For example, cold temperatures are stressful, and roots from colder climates show evidence of increased stress tolerance compared to species from warmer climates (Soudzilovskaia *et al.* 2015, Medeiros *et al.* 2017, Valverde-Barrante *et al.* 2017). More generally, climate gradients can be thought of as a niche axis, and different root strategies might enhance performance in different habitats. Even within a single plant community, there are diverse root morphologies, such as both deep and shallow-rooted species (Lynch 1995), and diverse root functions could enhance co-occurrence in plant communities (Nobel 1997), essentially allowing plants to partition the niche.

The morphology of roots strongly influences their ability to acquire nutrients and water under different environmental conditions, which has been demonstrated in a variety of plants (Lyu *et al.* 2016). The surface of the root is where resource uptake occurs, so when resources are limited, plants require more root surface area to acquire adequate water or nutrients (Luo *et al.* 2013). Quantitatively, root surface area is characterized by root length, diameter and branchy-ness. Longer, thinner roots have more surface area than shorter, fatter roots. Also, long, unbranched roots allow plants to explore farther afield, increasing the scale of resource foraging. Surface area can also be

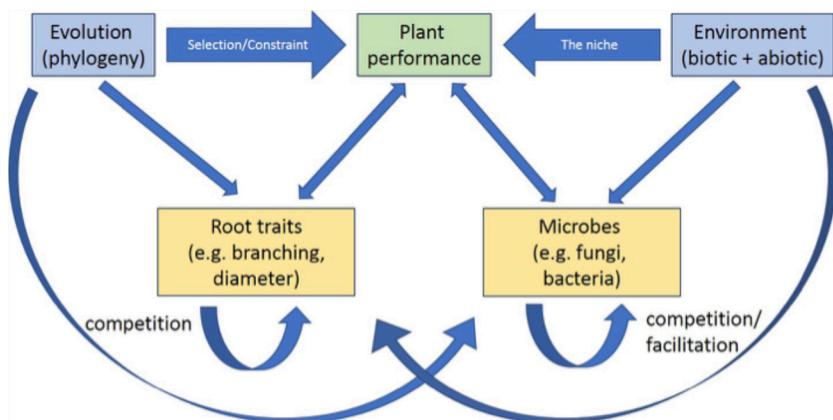


Fig. 1. Conceptual diagram outlining in an evolutionary ecology context the interactions among *Rhododendron*, soil abiotic properties, and the soil microbial community.

increased by adding more root branches, and more branchy root systems can proliferate rapidly within a small soil volume to effectively monopolize resources, which makes them good at precision exploitation of nutrient hot-spots (Campbell *et al.* 1991). In addition, specific root length (SRL, root length per carbon investment) relates strongly to root resource acquisition, life-span and stress resistance. Compared to those with low SRL, species with higher SRL exhibit more rapid resource uptake rates (Reich *et al.* 1998), but their roots have a shorter lifespan (McCormack *et al.* 2012) and lower stress resistance (Ostonen *et al.* 2007). Lastly, even within a species, all of these morphological features can change in response to environmental conditions such as soil type and water availability (Bengough *et al.* 2011) or nutrient availability (Dai *et al.* 2012).

The high diversity of root morphology across environments and among the world's plant species speaks to the possibility that root traits may also evolve in response to the environment (Bingham and Bengough 2003, Bengough *et al.* 2011). Importantly, the past evolutionary history of plant species ("phylogeny") also shapes the diversity of root traits we observe today. In a comparison across 34 species, Valverde-Barrantes *et al.* (2015) found that closely related woody plants are more similar to one another in their roots than to more distantly related plants. Thus, in some cases, root traits could represent a constraint imposed by past selection rather than an adaptation to current climate. How then might traits persist within lineages without providing a current fitness advantage? Past selective sweeps could reduce trait variation, and if this is followed by a period of relaxed selection, i.e., a reduction in the strength of selection on the trait (Lahti *et al.* 2009), then the conditions in which we find a particular root type today may not reflect the same selective forces which shaped that trait over evolutionary time. As long as selection is relaxed, and the trait is not too energetically expensive compared to alternative trait expressions, then an unhelpful trait may persist under the new conditions. This means that care must be taken to account for evolutionary history in the study of any plant traits or characteristics.

Understanding the relative roles of phylogeny and climate in driving the evolution of root morphology should continue to be a fruitful avenue of investigation, but we cannot overlook the potentially important role of sympatric soil microbes, which often interact directly with roots to affect root foraging functions (Chen *et al.* 2016) and plant growth (Pieterse *et al.* 2014; Figure 1). On the one hand, some microbes may have negative and harmful effects on plants. For example, microbial pathogens can impede nutrient uptake, and eventually can cause death (Berg *et al.* 2009). On the other hand, other microbes can be beneficial to plants by facilitating nutrient uptake from soil, or even improving resistance against soil microbial pathogens (Baral *et al.* 2013, Berg *et al.* 2009, Den Herder *et al.* 2010, Downie *et al.* 2015). The most famous of the beneficial soil microbes are the mycorrhizae.

The origin of mycorrhizae can be traced back to 400 million years ago (Remy *et al.* 1994), and today the mycorrhizal symbiosis between fungi and plants is prevalent. Mycorrhizae have been found to associate with nearly 80% of land plants (Wang and Qiu 2006), and through close associations with root cells, mycorrhizae provide nutrients to the plant (e.g., nitrogen and phosphorus; Marschner and Dell 1994) while in return, plants provide sugar to fuel fungal growth (Hobbie and Hobbie 2006). Arbuscular mycorrhiza is the most predominant association, in which fungi penetrate the root cells of their host plants through hyphae or arbuscules (Pfeffer *et al.* 1999, Schüßler *et al.* 2001, Wang and Qiu 2006). Unlike arbuscular mycorrhiza, ectomycorrhizal fungi do not penetrate plant cells, but instead form a hyphae network called the Hartig net, which can be found in the root's intercellular spaces (Blasius *et al.* 1986, Tedersoo *et al.* 2010). Ericoid mycorrhiza are another important and special type of mycorrhiza found only in the plant family Ericaceae. Ericoid mycorrhizal fungi just penetrate the cell walls but not the plasma membrane, and their hyphae form a loose pattern (Read 1996). It is reported that ericoid mycorrhiza help Ericaceous plants colonize in acidic or soil polluted with toxic metals, which may have played a critical role in the evolutionary adaptations to harsh habitat environments within family Ericaceae (Cairney *et al.* 2003).

Together, roots and root-associated microbial communities are indispensable for their unique ecological effects, playing an essential role in driving nutrient cycling in terrestrial ecosystems (Berg *et al.* 2009) and in shaping biological communities. A large proportion of total carbon products produced by plant photosynthesis is allocated to roots, and both roots and mycorrhizal fungi use it (Hobbie and Hobbie 2006). Through their effects on plant growth and decomposition, soil microbes, and especially mycorrhizal fungi, play an important role in controlling the carbon flow between the atmosphere and soils (Simard and Austin 2010). For example, when there is an increase in soil carbon availability, some high biomass fungi may dominate the microbe community, altering the soil carbon balance and limiting access to carbon, rather like a gatekeeper (Treseder 2005, Hobbie and Hobbie 2006).

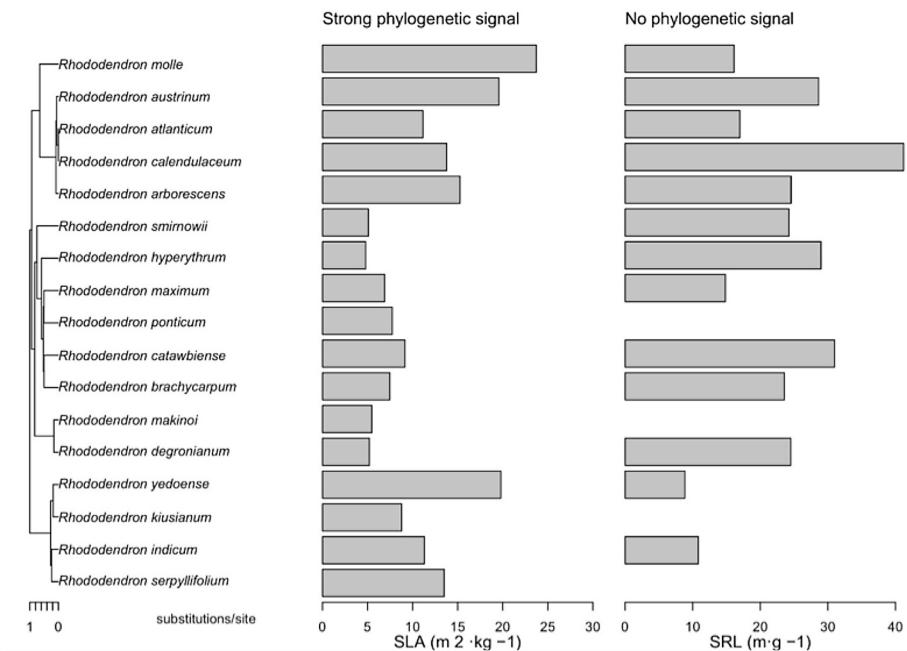
It is also important to realize that soil microbes are not randomly co-occurring (Saari *et al.* 2005). Just like plants, the diversity and function of the microbial community can be shaped by evolutionary history, as well as by current abiotic and biotic factors (Berg *et al.* 2009). Abiotic factors represent all the environmental conditions that plants experience, such as soil type, geographic location, climate patterns, or even the use of pesticides or antiseptics (Berg *et al.* 2009). Biotic effects on root communities can include human activities like nutrient deposition (Naples and Fisk 2010), climate change and climate variability (Tylianakis *et al.* 2008) or a change in biodiversity, such as through the introduction of exotic species (Kourtev *et al.* 2002). Interactions between

the microbes themselves, e.g. as facilitation or competition, can also play an important role in shaping the microbe community (Gorzelak *et al.* 2012). Microbial communities also respond to the direct consequences of plant community biodiversity (Burns *et al.* 2015), plant stage of development (Tingey *et al.* 2000), plant health (Purmale *et al.* 2012), or the composition of root exudates (Berg *et al.* 2009). In fact, moving from the surrounding soil toward the root surface, the composition of the microbial community becomes increasingly more specific, and different plant species may support unique microbial communities (Berg *et al.* 2009). Importantly, mycorrhizal fungi vary widely in their specificity, ranging from the most generalist arbuscular mycorrhiza fungi to the highly host-specific ericoid mycorrhizae.

### ***Rhododendron*, a study system with multi-dimensional diversity**

The 1000+ species of *Rhododendron* are broadly distributed across ecological and latitudinal gradients (Cox and Cox 1997) from the Arctic to the tropics. In terms of the soil environment, however, they have often been viewed as uniform, as most rhododendrons thrive on soils with a relatively low pH and low fertility (Wurzburger and Hendrick 2006). In addition, they are Ericaceous plants, which means that they host ericoid mycorrhizae on their roots (Read 1996). The importance and abundance of mycorrhizal fungi should be greater for species adapted to low fertility sites, because mycorrhizal fungi are exceptionally efficient at nutrient uptake (Marschner and Dell 1994). However, few studies have addressed root traits in Ericaceae lineages, perhaps because their strong association with specialized soil types and the presence of ericoid mycorrhizae suggests that their root traits might have low variation (Read 1996).

When Medeiros *et al.* (2017) examined 27 species of *Rhododendron* from a variety of habitats, they unexpectedly found a high diversity of root morphology across the genus. The potential influence of evolutionary history was then investigated using phylogenetic comparative analysis across four taxonomic sections: *Pentanthera* (deciduous azaleas), *Ponticum* (elepidotes), *Rhododendron* (lepidotes), and *Tsutsusi* (evergreen azaleas). This analysis showed that close relatives were strongly similar in the leaf trait of specific leaf area (leaf area per carbon investment), but were not similar in their mean root traits (Figure 2). Compared to species in section *Ponticum*, within section *Pentanthera*, specific root length (SRL) was more variable among species and across sites, but *Pentanthera* had more root tips per gram of carbon invested (higher specific root tip abundance). Furthermore, the variation observed in SRL across these rhododendrons represents >50% of global variation in this trait (Valverde-Barrantes *et al.* 2017). Thus, species within the genus *Rhododendron* are exceptionally diverse in their root morphology, especially after accounting for evolutionary history (Medeiros *et al.* 2017), suggesting that the root traits of rhododendrons have experienced a highly diversifying



**Fig. 2.** The effect of phylogenetic relationships on leaf and root traits of rhododendrons based on data presented in Medeiros et al. (2017). The phylogenetic relationships among species were estimated using DNA sequences obtained from the GenBank database (<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genbank/>). Among the studied species, specific leaf area (SLA) exhibited a strong phylogenetic signal, such that closely related species were more similar than expected by chance. Conversely, specific root length (SRL) was not similar among close relatives. The evolutionary distance between species is shown as the number of DNA nucleotide substitutions per site.

evolutionary history. These observations lead to the question: Is there evidence that *Rhododendron* root traits represent specific adaptations to climate variability? Medeiros et al. (2017) investigated the potential role of climate by comparing roots of species originating from either warm or cold climates, and by examining plants growing in two different botanical garden climates (Figure 3). Within a species, root traits differed strongly between botanical garden climates, indicating that rhododendrons have a strong capacity to adjust their root traits in response to environmental cues. Species originating from warm climates had different root traits from those from colder climates, particularly for species in sections *Pentanthera* and *Rhododendron*. Combined with the lack of evidence for evolutionary constraints on mean root traits, this result is consistent with the idea that *Rhododendron* root traits represent adaptations to climate.

Perhaps the most fascinating evidence that root diversity represents adaptations



Figure 3. Root samples examined by Medeiros *et al.* (2017) were collected in 2014 at The Holden Arboretum Layer Rhododendron Garden (top left) and in 2015 at the Rhododendron Species Foundation Botanical Garden (bottom left). Excavations uncovered wide variation in *Rhododendron* root systems, for example, a large, highly branched root system collected from beneath *R. triflorum* (top right) and a smaller, less branched root system collected beneath *R. calendulaceum* (bottom right).

to different climates is that *Rhododendron* species exhibit two distinct root foraging strategies. For species originating from or growing in warmer climates, their roots should have higher nutrient and water uptake rates compared to those from colder climates, because more active roots are needed to support the higher growth rates typical of warm climates (Reich 2014). Higher uptake rates can be accomplished by increasing root surface area per unit carbon invested, but there are two ways to do so. For a given unit of carbon invested, species within section *Rhododendron* (i.e., lepidotes) increased their total root length, while those in section *Pentanthera* (i.e., deciduous azaleas) increase the number of root tips (Figure 4, Medeiros *et al.* 2017). These two strategies have very different ecological implications. An increase in root length per unit carbon invested increases the scale of root foraging, allowing plants to search farther afield for nutrients. Thus, species with a large foraging scale should be more adept in environments that present consistently low nutrient availability across the landscape, but which have a

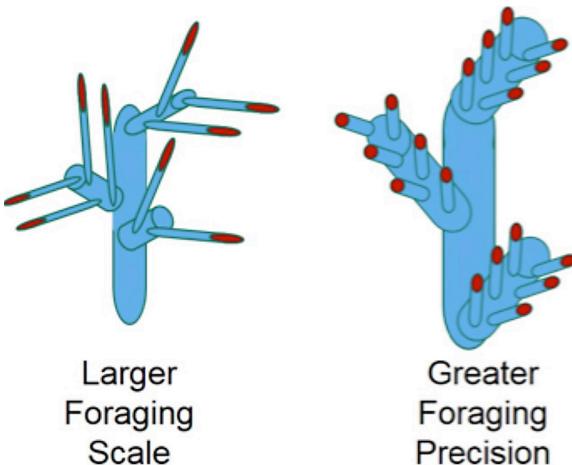


Figure 4. Two types of root morphology were observed in rhododendrons, based on data presented in Medeiros et al. (2017). As more resources are needed by a plant, some species build more root length per gram of carbon invested (left), which translates to a larger foraging range. In contrast, other species make more root tips per gram of carbon invested (right), which results in more intense foraging capacity in a given area.

low plant density, so that exploratory roots do not face strong competition from other species. In contrast, an increase in the number of root tips per carbon invested will improve the precision and intensity of root foraging, such that the plant can more effectively monopolize resources and take advantage of ephemeral nutrient hot-spots. These species should have an advantage in pulse-driven ecosystems, where high levels of competition limit the scale of foraging.

Though climate likely has a role to play in promoting root diversity in rhododendrons, Medeiros et al. (2017) found that root traits within section *Ponticum* (elepidotes) are only weakly related to climate. Given what we know about the importance of microbes for root function, could microbial community also drive the evolution of root traits within rhododendrons? The microbes associating with the roots of rhododendrons are many and vary greatly, and they include mutualists like mycorrhizal fungi, as well as pathogens and microbes with unknown functional attributes. *Rhododendron* roots are very commonly associated with certain ericoid mycorrhizal fungi such as *Oidiodendron* (Bougoura and Cairney 2005, Grunewaldt-Stöcker et al. 2013, Parker 2013, Sun et al. 2012, Tian et al. 2011, Vohnik et al. 2005, Zhang et al. 2009), *Rhizoscyphus* (Bougoura and Cairney 2005, Sun et al. 2012, Tian et al. 2011, Vohnik and Albrechtova 2011) and *Helotiaceae* (Bougoura and Cairney 2005, Sun et al. 2012, Tian et al. 2011). In addition, several studies have demonstrated colonization of *Rhododendron* roots by

ectomycorrhizae (Parker 2013, Sun *et al.* 2012, Vohnik *et al.* 2007) and AM fungi (Chaurasia *et al.* 2005). Bacteria with anti-microbial activity have also been observed on *Rhododendron* roots (Baral *et al.* 2011, Shimizu *et al.* 2000), but various pathogenic microbes have also been found on *Rhododendron* roots (Farr 1996, Linderman 1986), including the oomycete *Phytophthora* which has been named as one of the most influential and dangerous invasive species on Earth (Lowe *et al.* 2000, Nentwig *et al.* 2017). Just as intriguing, a number of microbial groups commonly observed on *Rhododendron* roots have unknown function, such as some bacteria (Grunewaldt-Stocker *et al.* 2013, Parker 2013) and the dark septate endophytes (Bougoura and Cairney 2005, Parker 2013, Sun *et al.* 2012, Vohnik and Albrechtova 2011, Vohnik *et al.* 2005). The role of the complex and multifaceted microbiome in *Rhododendron* evolution, including root trait evolution, is thus far largely unexplored and not well understood.

Interestingly, there is some evidence that soil microbes alter the response of *Rhododendron* root traits to climate. In the wild, the composition of ericoid rhizosphere microbes is closely related to elevation (Gorzelak *et al.* 2012). Within the ericoid genus *Vaccinium*, which is closely related to *Rhododendron*, the rhizosphere microbe community in alpine habitats of east-central British Columbia is dominated by *Rhizoscyphus ericae*, while at the bottom of low elevation valleys, *Phialocephala fortinii* was the dominant microbe species (Gorzelak *et al.* 2012). The general diversity of the *Rhododendron* rhizosphere microbe community also decreases moving upward from 1500m to 4500m elevation (Chaurasia *et al.* 2005), similar to the well-described pattern where plant diversity decreases with increasing elevation. Finally, abiotic factors are often correlated with soil microbes, for example, differences in soil pH influence the distribution of soil fungi. In alpine areas with acidic soil ( $\text{pH} = 4.6$ ), the number of spores from fungi in the roots of rhododendrons was smaller than those in areas with a higher pH ( $\text{pH} = 5.2$ , Chaurasia *et al.* 2005). Whether or not the morphological traits of rhododendrons change along environmental gradients in concert with these changes in root microbial community is currently unknown.

### **Looking to the future - what can we learn from rhododendrons?**

The multi-dimensional diversity within the genus *Rhododendron*, including its diverse taxonomy, wide geographic range, multiple climate preferences, variable root morphology, ease of accessibility, and unique microbial associations described here, provide an excellent study system for understanding the evolutionary ecology of root-microbe associations. Here, we highlight four “big-picture questions” for which *Rhododendron* represents a first-class study system:

#### **1. How does root morphology relate to plant-microbe interactions?**

Plants often respond to microbes in the soil near their roots by altering root traits, but the relationships among plant traits, soil microbes, and plant fitness are not fully understood (Friesen *et al.* 2011). While plant leaf traits such as leaf thickness and plant phylogeny correlate with leaf microbial community composition (Kembel *et al.* 2014), it is not known if similar patterns are true for root associated microbes and root morphology. Root morphology includes patterns in root branching, relative thickness of roots, and root-to-shoot ratios. Root branching might be associated with soil microbe communities if branching patterns affect the volume of soil influenced by a plant. Although the majority of plant functional trait studies have focused on leaf traits, newer work suggests that root traits face fundamentally different selective pressures (Comas *et al.* 2012, Soudzilovskaia *et al.* 2015, Chen *et al.* 2016, Medeiros *et al.* 2017). Thus, studies of root traits and root-microbe associations are likely to generate unique insights into plant functional ecology.

## 2. How do environmental and evolutionary histories shape root traits?

The study of plant traits holds considerable promise in ecology for providing synthesis and generality in a world that sometimes seems idiosyncratic and species-specific (Wright *et al.* 2004, Shipley *et al.* 2016). Comparative studies within clades of plants are particularly important for understanding the role of evolutionary history in these relationships. For example, rhododendrons with thinner leaves (higher specific leaf area) are associated with environments with warmer temperatures (Medeiros *et al.* 2017). Because closely related *Rhododendron* species are similar in this leaf trait, studies that do not consider evolutionary relationships (i.e., phylogeny) might miss this pattern (Medeiros *et al.* 2017).

Trait-based ecology currently lacks sufficient tests for relationships between functional traits and ecological gradients (Shipley *et al.* 2016). The remarkable global range of rhododendrons (many northern hemisphere habitats) crosses many ecological and altitudinal gradients, making this genus a strong candidate for comparative studies of plant traits. Because rhododendrons are often found in mountainous regions, and because species composition and the phenology of rhododendrons often shifts along elevation gradients (Hart *et al.* 2014), studies across elevation gradients are particularly promising. For example, functional traits like root morphology are well-known to vary across multiple continents, but within *Rhododendron* one could ask whether they correlate with continental and elevation gradients in a similar way, providing a necessary test of the potential generality of these correlations.

Also, by testing for a correlation between root traits and microbial abundance in the field, the assumption that these traits are “functional” can be tested (Shipley *et al.* 2016) to determine which traits directly influence plant fitness, i.e., improved

survival and/or fecundity. In addition, much of the functional trait literature assumes that intraspecific variation is either small, or does not confound our interpretation of functional trait comparisons (Funk *et al.* 2016, Shipley *et al.* 2016). Rhododendron presents a particularly interesting choice for studies that consider the relative influences of non-genetic changes in phenotype in response to environment (plasticity) and genetic differences in determining trait-climate relationships (Medeiros *et al.* 2017).

### **3. What is the role of the plant root microbiome in plant co-occurrence?**

Ecological patterns, such as species co-occurrence patterns, are likely influenced by plant-soil microbe associations. For example, soil pathogens are thought to mediate species co-occurrence in plant communities (Bever *et al.* 2015). The Janzen-Connell hypothesis (Janzen 1970, Connell 1971) suggests that plant community diversity would be enhanced if seedlings performed better growing near other species than near their own species. This pattern could be influenced by species-specific soil pathogens, such as soil fungi, and might minimize the likelihood of a single plant species becoming dominant in a community (Sarmiento *et al.* 2017).

The multi-species complexity of *Rhododendron* communities combined with ecological gradients offer the opportunity to answer questions such as: What are the co-occurrence patterns between microbes and *Rhododendron* species? When different plant species co-occur, do they have similar or divergent soil microbiomes? Is there evidence of plant species-specific soil microbiomes? And particularly for *Rhododendron*, what is the role of evolution in shaping interactions soil pathogens (Bever *et al.* 2015)?

### **4. What is the role of plant root microbiome in species diversification?**

Ecologists and evolutionary biologists have long been interested in understanding the factors driving and constraining diversity. Recent research has begun to explore the possible role of species interactions in species diversification, and interactions between rhododendrons and their soil microbes are a particularly rich area for investigation. For example, in areas where there are many co-occurring species of rhododendrons, could root attributes or soil microbes contribute to niche differentiation and species diversification?

Soil mutualists could influence species diversification over time by allowing plants to colonize otherwise unsuitable habitats (Afkhami *et al.* 2014). This type of facilitation might be very important for ericoid plants, including rhododendrons, because these are often found in lower pH habitats under low nutrient conditions, which is very stressful for many plants. By broadening the set of conditions where these plants can persist (Afkhami *et al.* 2014), soil mutualists could increase “ecological opportunity” for species diversification (Losos and Mahler 2010). Alternatively, mutualist soil organisms with a limited geographical range could constrain species ranges (e.g., invasion of introduced

pines, Nuñez *et al.* 2009), potentially leading to lower rates of species diversification in taxa that rely heavily on mutualists. Large data sets on *Rhododendron* that combine species interaction data with phylogenies would help address these possibilities.

## References

- Afkhami, M.E., P.J. McIntyre, and S.Y. Strauss. 2014. Mutualist-mediated effects on species' range limits across large geographic scales. *Ecology Letters* 17: 1265–1273.
- Afkhami, M.E., D.L. Mahler, J.H. Burns, M.G. Weber, M.F. Wojciechowski, J. Sprent, and S.Y. Strauss. 2018. Symbioses with nitrogen-fixing bacteria: Nodulation and phylogenetic data across legume genera. *Ecology* 99(2): 502–502.
- Baral, B., P. Rana, and B.L. Maharjan. 2013. Antimicrobial potentials of endophytic fungi inhabiting *Rhododendron anthopogon* D. Don. *Ecoprint* 18: 39–44.
- Bengough, A.G., B.M. McKenzie, P.D. Hallett, and T.A. Valentine. 2011. Root elongation, water stress, and mechanical impedance: a review of limiting stresses and beneficial root tip traits. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 62: 59–68.
- Berg, G., and K. Smalla. 2009. Plant species and soil type cooperatively shape the structure and function of microbial communities in the rhizosphere. *FEMS Microbiology Ecology* 68: 1–13.
- Bever, J.D., S.A. Mangan, and H.M. Alexander. 2015. Maintenance of plant species diversity by pathogens. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics* 46: 305–325.
- Bingham, I.J., and A.G. Bengough. 2003. Morphological plasticity of wheat and barley roots in response to spatial variation in soil strength. *Plant and Soil* 250: 273–282.
- Blasius, D., W. Feil, I. Kottke, and F. Oberwinkler. 1986. Hartig net structure and formation in fully ensheathed ectomycorrhizas. *Nordic Journal of Botany* 6(6): 837–842.
- Bougoure, D.S., and J.W.G. Cairney. 2005. Fungi associated with hair roots of *Rhododendron lochiae* (Ericaceae) in an Australian tropical cloud forest revealed by culturing and culture-independent molecular methods. *Environmental Microbiology* 7: 1743–1754.
- Cairney, J.W.G., and A.A. Meharg. 2003. Ericoid mycorrhiza: a partnership that exploits harsh edaphic conditions. *European Journal of Soil Science* 54: 735–740.
- Chaurasia, B., A. Pandey, and L.M.S. Palni. 2005. Distribution, colonization and diversity of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi associated with central Himalayan rhododendrons. *Forest Ecology and Management* 207: 315–324.
- Chen, W., R.T. Koide, T.S. Adams, J.L. DeForest, L. Cheng, and D.D.M. Eissenstat. 2016. Root morphology and mycorrhizal symbioses together shape nutrient foraging strategies of temperate trees. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 113: 6–11.

- Comas, L.H., K.E. Mueller, L.L. Taylor, P.E. Midford, H.S. Callahan, and D.J. Beerling. 2012. Evolutionary patterns and biogeochemical significance of Angiosperm root traits. *International Journal of Plant Sciences* 173: 584–595.
- Connell, J. 1971. On the role of natural enemies in preventing competitive exclusion in some marine animals and in rain forest trees. *Dynamics of Populations* P.J. den Boer, Gradwell GR (eds). Centre for Agricultural Publishing and Documentation, Wageningen, the Netherlands.
- Cox, P.A., and K.N.E. Cox. 1997. The encyclopedia of *Rhododendron* species. Glendoick Publishing, Glencarse, Perth, Scotland.
- Dai X, Y. Wang, A. Yang, and W.H. Zhang. 2012. OsMYB2P-1, an R2R3 MYB transcription factor, is involved in the regulation of phosphate-starvation responses and root architecture in rice. *Plant Physiology* 159: 169–83.
- Den Herder, G., G. Van Isterdael, T. Beeckman, and I. De Smet. 2010. The roots of a new green revolution. *Trends in Plant Science* 15: 600-607.
- Downie, H.F., M.O. Adu, S. Schmidt, W. Otten, L.X. Dupuy, P.J. White, and T.A. Valentine. 2015. Challenges and opportunities for quantifying roots and rhizosphere interactions through imaging and image analysis. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 38: 1213–1232.
- Farr, D., H. Esteban, and M. Palm. 1996. Fungi on *Rhododendron*: a world reference. Parkway Publishers, Inc., Boone, North Carolina.
- Friesen, M.L., S.S. Porter, S.C. Stark, E.J. von Wettberg, J.L. Sachs, and E. Martinez-Romero. 2011. Microbially mediated plant functional traits. *Annual Reviews in Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics* 42: 23–46.
- Funk, J.L., J.E. Larson, G.M. Ames, B.J. Butterfield, J. Cavender-Bares, J. Firn, D.C. Laughlin, A.E. Sutton-Grier, L. Williams, and J. Wright. 2016. Revisiting the Holy Grail: using plant functional traits to understand ecological processes. *Biological Reviews* 92: 1156–1173.
- Gorzelak, M.A., S. Hambleton, and H.B. Massicotte. 2012. Community structure of ericoid mycorrhizas and root-associated fungi of *Vaccinium membranaceum* across an elevation gradient in the Canadian Rocky Mountains. *Fungal Ecology* 5: 36–45.
- Grunewaldt-Stocker, G., C. von den Berg, J. Knopp, and H. von Alten. 2013. Interactions of ericoid mycorrhizal fungi and root pathogens in *Rhododendron*: In vitro tests with plantlets in sterile liquid culture. *Plant Root* 7: 33–48.
- Hart, R., J. Salick, S. Ranjikar, and J. Xu. 2014. Herbarium specimens show contrasting phenological responses to Himalayan climate. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*: 201403376
- Hijmans, R.J., S.E. Cameron, J.L. Parra, P.G. Jones, and A. Jarvis. 2005. Very high resolution interpolated climate surfaces for global land areas. *International Journal of Climatology* 25: 1965 – 1978.

- Hobbie, J.E., and E.A. Hobbie. 2006.  $^{15}\text{N}$  in symbiotic fungi and plants estimates nitrogen and carbon flux rates in Arctic tundra. *Ecology* 87: 816-822.
- Janzen, D.H. 1970. Herbivores and the Number of Tree Species in Tropical Forests. *American Naturalist* 104: 501–528.
- Kembel, S.W., T.K. O'Connor, H.K. Arnold, S.P. Hubbell, S.J. Wright, and J.L. Green. 2014. Relationships between phyllosphere bacterial communities and plant functional traits in a neotropical forest. *Proceedings in the National Academic of Sciences* 111: 13715–13720.
- Linderman, R.G., E.A. Davis, and J.L. Marlow. 2006. Response of selected nursery crop plants to inoculation with isolates of *Phytophthora ramorum* and other *Phytophthora* species. *HortTechnology* 16: 216–224.
- Losos, J. B., and D.L. Mahler. 2010. Adaptive radiation: the interaction of ecological opportunity, adaptation, and speciation. In *Evolution since Darwin: the first 150 Years* [M.A. Bell, D. J. Futuyma, W.F. Eanes, and J.S. Levinton, M.A. Bell, D.J. Futuyma, W.F. Eanes, and J.S. Levinton, Eds.] Pp. 381-420. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates.
- Lynch, J. 1995. Root architecture and plant productivity. *Plant Physiology* 109: 7-13.
- Lyu, Y., H. Tang, H. Li, F. Zhang, Z. Rengel, W.R. Whalley, and J. Shen. 2016. Major crop species show differential balance between root morphological and physiological responses to variable phosphorus supply. *Frontiers in Plant Science* 7: 1939.
- Medeiros, J.S., J.H. Burns, J. Nicholson, L. Rogers, and O. Valverde-Barrantes. 2017. Decoupled leaf and root carbon economics is a key component in the ecological diversity and evolutionary divergence of deciduous and evergreen lineages of genus *Rhododendron*. *American Journal of Botany* 104: 803–816.
- Nobel, P.S. 1997. Root distribution and seasonal production in the northwestern Sonoran Desert for a C-3 subshrub, a C-4 bunchgrass, and a CAM leaf succulent. *American Journal of Botany* 84: 949–955.
- Nuñez, M.A., T.R. Horton, and D. Simberloff. 2009. Lack of belowground mutualisms hinders Pinaceae invasions. *Ecology* 90: 2352-2359.
- Parker, D.C. 2013. Diversity and rate of infection of ericoid mycorrhizal fungi that colonize *Rhododendron maximum* along an elevational gradient and their potential to degrade poly-aromatic hydrocarbons using lignin degrading enzymes. Appalachian State University.
- Pfeffer, P.E., D.D. Douds, G. Bécard, and Y. Shachar-Hill. 1999. Carbon uptake and the metabolism and transport of lipids in an arbuscular mycorrhiza. *Plant Physiology* 120(2): 587-598.
- Purmale, L., I. Apine, V. Nikolajeva, L. Grantina, G. Verkley, and S. Tomsone. 2012.

- Endophytic fungi in evergreen rhododendrons cultivated in vitro and in vivo. *Environmental and Experimental Biology* 10: 1–7.
- Read, D. 1996. The structure and function of the Ericoid mycorrhizal root. *Annals of Botany* 77: 365–374.
- Remy, W., T.N. Taylor, H. Hass, and H. Kerp. 1994. Four hundred-million-year-old vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 91(25): 11841–11843.
- Saari, S.K., C.D. Campbell, J. Russell, I.J. Alexander, and I.C. Anderson. 2005. Pine microsatellite markers allow roots and ectomycorrhizas to be linked to individual trees. *New Phytologist* 165: 295–304.
- Sarmiento, C., P.C. Zalamea, J.W. Dalling, A.S. Davis, S.M. Stump, J.M. U'Ren, and A.E. Arnold. 2017. Soilborne fungi have host affinity and host-specific effects on seed germination and survival in a lowland tropical forest. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 114: 11458–11463.
- Schüßler, A., D. Schwarzott, and C. Walker. 2001. A new fungal phylum, the Glomeromycota: phylogeny and evolution. *Mycological Research* 105: 1413–1421.
- Shimizu, M., Y. Nakagawa, Y. Sato, T. Furumai, Y. Igarashi, H. Onaka, R. Yoshida, and H. Kunoh. 2000. Studies on endophytic actinomycetes (I) *Streptomyces* sp. isolated from *Rhododendron* and its antifungal activity. *Journal of General Plant Pathology* 66: 360–366.
- Shipley, B., F. De Bello, J.H.C. Cornelissen, E. Laliberté, D.C. Laughlin, and P.B. Reich. 2016. Reinforcing loose foundation stones in trait-based plant ecology. *Oecologia* 180: 923–931.
- Simard, S., and M. Austin. 2010. The role of mycorrhizas in forest soil stability with climate change. In *Climate Change and Variability*. InTech.
- Soudzilovskaya, N.A., J.C. Douma, A.A. Akhmetzhanova, P.M. van Bodegom, W.K. Cornwell, E.J. Moens, K.K. Treseder, M. Tibbett, Y.P. Wang, and J.H.C. Cornelissen. 2015. Global patterns of plant root colonization intensity by mycorrhizal fungi explained by climate and soil chemistry. *Global Ecology and Biogeography* 24: 371–382.
- Sun, L.F., K.Q. Pei, F. Wang, Q. Ding, Y.H. Bing, B. Gao, Y. Zheng, Y. Liang, and K.P. Ma. 2012. Different distribution patterns between putative Ericoid mycorrhizal and other fungal assemblages in roots of *Rhododendron decorum* in the Southwest of China. *PLoS One* 7: e49867.
- Tian, W., C.Q. Zhang, P. Qiao, and R. Milne. 2011. Diversity of culturable ericoid mycorrhizal fungi of *Rhododendron decorum* in Yunnan, China. *Mycologia* 103: 703–709.
- Tedersoo, L., T.W. May, and M.E. Smith. 2010. Ectomycorrhizal lifestyle in fungi: global diversity, distribution, and evolution of phylogenetic lineages. *Mycorrhiza*

20: 217-263.

- Treseder, K.K. 2005. Nutrient acquisition strategies of fungi and their relation to elevated atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>. *Mycology Series* 23: 713.
- Valverde-Barrantes, O.J., G.T. Freschet, C. Roumet, and C.B. Blackwood. 2017. A worldview of root traits: the influence of ancestry, growth form, climate and mycorrhizal association on the functional trait variation of fine-root tissues in seed plants. *New Phytologist* 215: 1562–1573.
- Vohník, M., and J. Albrechtová. 2011. The Co-occurrence and morphological continuum between Ericoid mycorrhiza and Dark Septate Endophytes in roots of six European *Rhododendron* species. *Folia Geobotanica* 46: 373–386.
- Vohník, M., J. Albrechtová, and M. Vosatka. 2005. The inoculation with *Oidiodendron maius* and *Phialocephala fortinii* alters phosphorus and nitrogen uptake, foliar C : N ratio and root biomass distribution in *Rhododendron* cv. Azurro. *Symbiosis* 40: 87–96.
- Vohník, M., M. Fendrych, J. Albrechtová, and M. Vosatka. 2007. Intracellular colonization of *Rhododendron* and *Vaccinium* roots by *Cenococcum geophilum*, *Geomyces pannorum* and *Meliniomycetes variabilis*. *Folia Microbiologia* 52: 407–414.
- Wang, B., and Y.L. Qiu. 2006. Phylogenetic distribution and evolution of mycorrhizas in land plants. *Mycorrhiza* 16: 299–363.
- Wright, I.J., P.B. Reich, M. Westoby, D.D. Ackerly, Z. Baruch, F. Bongers, J. Cavender-bares, T. Chapin, J.H.C. Cornelissen, M. Diemer, J. Flexas, E. Garnier, P.K. Groom, and J. Gulias. 2004. The worldwide leaf economics spectrum. *Nature* 428: 821–827.
- Zhang, C., L.J. Yin, and S.L. Dai. 2009. Diversity of root-associated fungal endophytes in *Rhododendron fortunei* in subtropical forests of China. *Mycorrhiza* 19: 417–423.

## **Section: Genetics and Evolution**

### **Chapter 6**

---

# **Floral Morphology of *Rhododendron* and its Relation with Pollinators**

**Eapsa Berry and R. Geeta**

**Department of Botany  
University of Delhi  
Delhi 110007, India**



E. Berry



R. Geeta

#### **Abstract**

Flower diversity within a plant group is directly proportional to the number of pollinator species available to pollinate that plant group, because variations in floral attributes bring about changes in pollinator preference tending to result in more pollination variety, and conversely, changes in pollinator behavior add to floral diversity. A particular set of floral traits can sometimes be studied as a pollination syndrome, a two-way association between that set of traits with its attraction of a specific group of pollinators. *Rhododendron* flowers show sufficient diversity in shape, color, and pigment patterns to warrant a study of pollinator syndromes. To date, there has not been much analysis of ecological and evolutionary aspects of floral attributes i.e. characters and rewards including their value and content, and their collective interaction with pollinators and pollinator groups in this species rich genus.

Here, we analyze information on floral diversity and pollinator types to identify putative pollination syndromes in *Rhododendron*. We do this by coding floral diversity as “character-complexes”, or “Cc”, which have been looked upon as initial hypotheses of pollination syndromes that we evaluate in the context of known associated pollinators. This approach to understanding the floral biology of this richly diverse genus can be used as a general method to understand the evolution of floral forms and pollinator ecology in other diverse groups of plants.

## **Introduction**

Diversity of floral forms and variation in pollinator behavior are two characteristic features of the dynamics of flower-pollinator interaction that in turn affects reproductive fitness of a species. One of the most significant fitness attributes in plants is success of fertilization by a pollinator. A pollinators' choice of flower is affected by flower pigmentation including presence or absence of pigment patterns (Hansen *et al.* 2012), shape and size of the flower, and size of pigment patterns (Medel *et al.* 2003), symmetry of the flower including orientation (Jesson and Barrett 2003; Citerne *et al.* 2010), type and content of floral reward (Alm *et al.* 1990; Perret *et al.* 2001; Krömer *et al.* 2008), among many other floral attributes. Characterisation of floral morphology is a first step in any floral evolutionary and ecological study in any plant group.

*Rhododendron*, as a highly diverse and abundant group of species, can serve as a model system for study in varied disciplines of plant science. Its selection as the system to study floral evolution and ecology in woody perennials can address numerous questions and potentially provide answers and understanding that will be relevant to other plant groups.

The main objective of this study is to use recent understanding of the ecological and evolutionary basis of floral diversity in *Rhododendron* to identify putative pollination syndromes in this genus. In a recent study (Berry *et al.* 2018), an evolutionary association was shown in *Rhododendron* between floral monosymmetry [= being divisible into two like parts bilaterally by a single plane through the axis of the flower] and the presence of pigment patterns on the corolla. Subtle differences in flexion of style or stamens, or bundling of stamens can lead to a monosymmetric condition in a flower with a polysymmetric [= divisible into like parts by more than one axial plane] corolla. [A (floral) character has possible values or states, each of which is called its particular character state or characteristic or trait, the example above meaning that monosymmetry and polysymmetry are just two possible character states or traits of the flower character called symmetry.] In *Rhododendron*, monosymmetric corolla, reflexed stamens, bundled stamens, and reflexed styles do separately give rise to overall monosymmetry of the flower. The study found that each of the four monosymmetry traits was significantly evolutionarily correlated with the presence of pigment patterns on the corolla, as found in a phylogenetic tree of 96 species of *Rhododendron*. It was also noted that these morphological changes are very labile, and that multiple transitions have occurred amongst these floral symmetry traits (Berry *et al.* 2018).

Here, we expanded on that study to combine the above five floral characters, namely, corolla symmetry, flexion of stamens, bundling of stamens, flexion of style, and presence of corolla pigment pattern, into a single five-fold character called a "character-complex" (Cc) for convenience, and analyzed this character complex in the context of

previous information of pollinators, with the objective of better understanding floral morphological aspects of plant-pollinator dynamics. To be precise, the purpose of this study was to address the following questions: i) What meaningful information could be extracted from the representational distribution of the various character state combinations of the five floral characters, i.e., of the character-complex (Cc) states explained above? ii) How are these Cc states distributed on the phylogeny of *Rhododendron*? and iii) Are any of these Cc states or their groups associated with specific pollinators as to be identifiable as pollination syndromes?

## Methods

### *Taxon sampling*

To study the distribution of Cc states of the four symmetry attributes together with presence of pigment patterns on corolla in *Rhododendron*, and to understand the relationship between floral Cc states and pollinator types, two datasets were compiled – one, Cc states were coded for 83 species of *Rhododendron* (plus the outgroup species) for mapping on the phylogenetic tree (after Berry *et al.* 2018); two, fresh scoring was done for an additional 25 species for which pollinator information was available in the literature. Coding was done based on flower photographs from published and online sources, as done in Berry *et al.* (2018).

### **Character-complex states (Cc states): coding and distribution**

Five floral characters were combined into a character-complex (Cc) given by an ordered 5-tuple of characters, namely, (corolla symmetry, flexion of stamens, arrangement of stamens, flexion of style, and presence/absence of corolla pigment pattern); and each ordered 5-tuple of the five individual character states (taken in the definite order of the five component characters in the Cc) was called a “Cc state.” The five floral characters were coded as follows (after Berry *et al.* 2018):

- (i) **corolla symmetry:** monosymmetric (bilaterally symmetric or zygomorphic) 0, and polysymmetric (radially symmetric or actinomorphic) 1;
- (ii) **flexion of stamens:** reflexed (abaxial flexion) 0, hooked (slight flexion abaxially, but only at the tip) 1, and straight 2;
- (iii) **arrangement of stamens:** bundled 0, loosely bundled 1, and not bundled 2;
- (iv) **flexion of style:** reflexed (abaxial flexion) 0, hooked (slight flexion abaxially, but only at the tip) or straight 1, and deflexed (adaxial flexion) 2;
- (v) **corolla pigment pattern:** absent 0, and present 1.

As explained above, a particular combination of five character states (i.e., an ordered 5-tuple or a 5-sequence of code values), one each for the five characters in the specific order mentioned, was taken to depict a possible Cc state, which was called representable

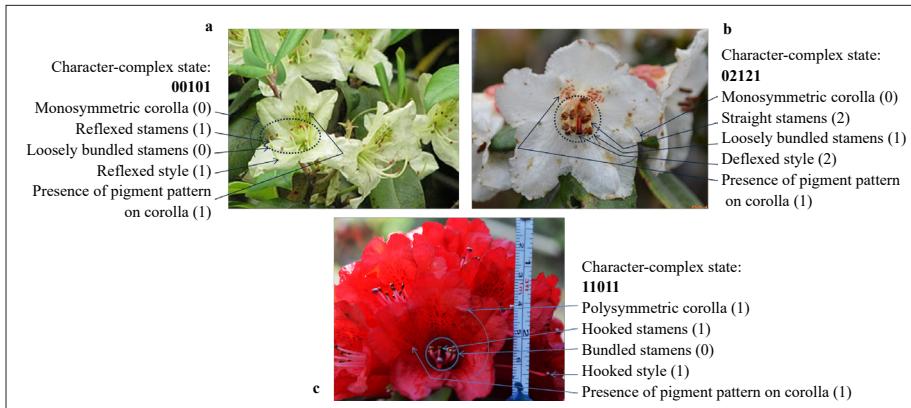


Fig. 1 Illustration of our coding of the floral character-complex (Cc) showing three examples of ordered 5-tuples of character-complex (Cc) states. Three *Rhododendron* species: a. *R. triflorum*, b. *R. pendulum*, c. *R. arboreum* are shown here. The five-component Cc: corolla symmetry, stamen flexion, stamen bundling, style flexion, and pigment pattern on corolla, was coded in a combination, using Berry *et al.* (2018), to yield five component codes in the stated order making each Cc state an ordered 5-tuple of character values.

if found to correspond to, i.e., exhibited through, at least one of the species of our study; e.g., 00101 (Fig. 1). Theoretically, there are 108 possible Cc states, i.e.,  $2^2 \cdot 3^3 \cdot 3^3 \cdot 2$ , the multiplication result of two states for corolla symmetry, three for stamen flexion, three for arrangement of stamens, three for style flexion, and two for pigment patterns. We coded a total of 109 species for Cc states. *Empetrum nigrum* (crowberry, Ericaceae) was included as the outgroup species.

The maximum likelihood (ML) majority-rule consensus tree (Berry *et al.* 2018) was used to partly show the distribution of Cc states. The 25 additional species were similarly coded to add to the representational distribution picture of the Cc states and to associate it with pollinator information.

Pollinator information and altitude range of the study species were obtained from published work and online sources. This information was related with Cc state information for the different species to determine any pattern between floral Cc traits and pollinator types.

## Results and Discussion

Out of the 108 theoretically possible Cc states only 33 Cc states (less than 1/3) were found to occur in the 84 species of *Rhododendron* assessed and with *Empetrum nigrum*. This means only 33 Cc states were found representable. Table 1 lists the Cc states and the *Rhododendron* species that exhibit these combinations. In the character state coding

**Table 1.** List of character-complex (Cc) states, with numbers and names of *Rhododendron* species representing those Cc states. Cc states and species names in red indicate additional species not present in our phylogenetic analysis in Fig. 2. There is one outgroup species used in the analysis, the crowberry *Empetrum nigrum*, which is a close relative to *Rhododendron* chosen for study. The outgroup species helps in rooting the tree, and in understanding the monophyly of our species.

Cc state	Symbol for Cc state	Number of examined species for Cc state	Representing <i>Rhododendron</i> species
00101	Blue circle: 	18	<i>R. albrechtii</i> , <i>R. canadense</i> , <i>R. catawbiense</i> , <i>R. dalhousiaeae</i> , <i>R. farrerae</i> , <i>R. indicum</i> , <i>R. kaempferi</i> , <i>R. macrosepalum</i> , <i>R. maximum</i> , <i>R. mucronulatum</i> , <i>R. ovatum</i> , <i>R. ponticum</i> , <i>R. reticulatum</i> , <i>R. rubropilosum</i> , <i>R. simsii</i> , <i>R. trichanthum</i> , <i>R. triflorum</i> , and <i>R. vaseyi</i>
11011	Brown rectangle: 	17	<i>R. arboreum</i> , <i>R. barbatum</i> , <i>R. beesianum</i> , <i>R. delavayi</i> , <i>R. ellottii</i> , <i>R. floccigerum</i> , <i>R. hodgsonii</i> , <i>R. hyperythrum</i> , <i>R. lacteum</i> , <i>R. macabeanum</i> , <i>R. maculiferum</i> , <i>R. neriflorum</i> , <i>R. pseudochrysanthum</i> , <i>R. rex</i> , <i>R. sinogrande</i> , <i>R. thomsonii</i> , and <i>R. wardii</i>
00001	Green rectangle: 	11	<i>R. calendulaceum</i> , <i>R. camtschaticum</i> , <i>R. canescens</i> , <i>R. lutescens</i> , <i>R. luteum</i> , <i>R. macrophyllum</i> , <i>R. molle</i> , <i>R. nudiflorum</i> , <i>R. occidentale</i> , <i>R. schlippenbachii</i> , and <i>R. stamineum</i>
12210	Pink rectangle: 	6	<i>R. dielsianum</i> , <i>R. lapponicum</i> , <i>R. micranthum</i> , <i>R. orthocladium</i> , <i>R. setosum</i> , and <i>R. xanthostephanum</i>
12110	Pink circle: 	5	<i>R. albiflorum</i> , <i>R. cinnabarinum</i> , <i>R. nipponicum</i> , <i>R. radians</i> , and <i>R. spinuliferum</i>

Table 1 continued on next page

Table 1 continued

Cc state	Symbol for Cc state	Number of examined species for Cc state	Representing <i>Rhododendron</i> species
10101	Blue rectangle: 	5	<i>R. adenopodum</i> , <i>R. kiusianum</i> , <i>R. makinoi</i> , <i>R. moulmainense</i> , and <i>R. mucronulatum</i>
11010	Blue spiral: 	5	<i>R. cyanocarpum</i> , <i>R. degronianum</i> , <i>R. ferrugineum</i> , <i>R. pachysanthum</i> , and <i>R. wardii</i>
01111	Green circle: 	4	<i>R. aureum</i> , <i>R. brachycarpum</i> , <i>R. minus</i> var. <i>chapmanii</i> , and <i>R. tashiroi</i>
11111	Red spiral: 	4	<i>R. clementinae</i> , <i>R. konori</i> , <i>R. moupinense</i> , and <i>R. roxieanum</i>
10001	Green spiral: 	4	<i>R. excellens</i> , <i>R. formosanum</i> , <i>R. nuttallii</i> , and <i>R. smirnowii</i>
11210	Brown circle: 	4 (3 plus one, outgroup)	<i>Empetrum nigrum</i> (outgroup species), <i>R. hypoleucum</i> , <i>R. impeditum</i> , and <i>R. tomentosum</i>
00201	Grey star: 	3	<i>R. hongkongense</i> , <i>R. maximum</i> , and <i>R. semibarbatum</i>
02121	Green star: 	3	<i>R. baileyi</i> , <i>R. pendulum</i> , and <i>R. trichocladum</i>
10100	Brown star: 	3	<i>R. keiskei</i> , <i>R. kiusianum</i> , and <i>R. leptocephalum</i>
12120	Blue star: 	2	<i>R. afghanicum</i> , and <i>R. virgatum</i>

Table 1 continued on next page

Rhododendrons International 87

Table 1 continued

Cc state	Symbol for Cc state	Number of examined species for Cc state	Representing <i>Rhododendron</i> species
12220	Orange star: 	2	<i>R. campylogynum</i> , and <i>R. genestierianum</i>
12221	Black star: 	2	<i>R. campylogynum</i> , and <i>R. sulfureum</i>
01101	Pink star: 	2	<i>R. campanulatum</i> , and <i>R. mekongense</i>
00100	Yellow star: 	2	<i>R. keiskei</i> , and <i>R. wadanum</i>
11211	Red hollow square: 	2	<i>R. oreotrephes</i> , and <i>R. ungerii</i>
00000; 01000; 11110; 01011; 10000; 12011; 12111; 02221; 01001; 02101; 01211; 11221; 12101; <b>00021;</b> <b>02010</b>	Black hollow square: 	1, for each of the 15 Cc states <u>listed in Column 1</u>	<i>R. canescens</i> ; <i>R. ciliatum</i> ; <i>R. cinnabarinum</i> ; <i>R. edgeworthii</i> ; <i>R. formosanum</i> ; <i>R. forrestii</i> ; <i>R. konori</i> ; <i>R. lepidotum</i> ; <i>R. maddenii</i> ; <i>R. mekongense</i> ; <i>R. siderophyllum</i> ; <i>R. sulfureum</i> ; <i>R. veitchianum</i> ; <i>R. nudiflorum</i> ; and <i>R. carringtoniae</i> , respectively for the states mentioned in column <u>1</u> .
	Question mark: ?	14, <u>the number of species for which we do not have coding, i.e., for which no Cc states could be assigned.</u>	<i>R. benhallii</i> ; <i>R. menziesii</i> ; <i>R. anthopogon</i> ; <i>R. asperulum</i> ; <i>R. championae</i> ; <i>R. crassifolium</i> ; <i>R. herzogii</i> ; <i>R. kongboense</i> ; <i>R. mariesii</i> ; <i>R. santapaui</i> ; <i>R. sargentianum</i> ; <i>R. sororium</i> ; <i>R. tsusiyophyllum</i> ; and <i>R. vacciniodes</i>

within the data from Berry *et al.* (2018) fourteen of the species in that study could not be coded for Cc states due to uncertainty of states for some characters.

Cc states receiving representation are marked for ease of reference with coloured symbols, as defined in Table 1, on a consensus tree from an ML phylogenetic analysis of molecular data from Berry *et al.* (2018). It can be noted from the distribution of Cc states with high abundance that some are well-distributed across the tree while others are confined to particular clades.

Floral Cc state 00001 (symbol: green rectangle), described as monosymmetric corolla, reflexed stamens, bundled stamens, reflexed style, and presence of pigment pattern on corolla, was present in all the major clades of the phylogenetic tree (designated A, B, C in the study) and also in *R. camschaticum*; this state, monosymmetric in *all* components, happens to be the second most abundant state in our analysis (Fig. 2). Cc state 00101 (blue circle), i.e., monosymmetric corolla, reflexed stamen, loosely bundled stamens, reflexed style, and presence of pigment pattern, was also present in clades A, B, and C and was the most abundant state in our study. The third most abundant Cc state 11011 (brown rectangle) was confined to clade B, i.e., subgenus *Hymenanthes*, and can be described as: a polysymmetric corolla with androecium bundling, resulting in effective floral monosymmetry, together with components of slight monosymmetric flexion (i.e., hooked flexion) of stamens and styles, and finally with presence of corolla pigment pattern. The fourth most abundant Cc state 12210 (pink rectangle) was confined to clade A, i.e., subgenus *Rhododendron*. Thus, we can see that some Cc states are widely distributed across the phylogenetic tree, while some others are confined to single clades. This shows that the frequent or favored suites of traits or Cc states are differentially established – either being confined to a single clade, pointing to the possibility of specialized pollinator preference, or occurring across clades and indicating generalized pollinators.

We have information on pollinators that is relatable to some of the representable Cc states by various species of *Rhododendron* (Table 2). There are some noticeable trends of association between the floral Cc states and the types of pollinators visiting those flowers (Table 2).

In the pollinator association study, the most abundant Cc state, namely 00101 (blue circle), i.e., monosymmetric corolla, reflexed stamens, loosely bundled stamens, reflexed style, and presence of pigment pattern was found to be associated with insect pollination. Cc state 11011 (brown rectangle), i.e., polysymmetric corolla, hooked stamens, bundled stamens, hooked/straight style, and presence of pigment pattern, was predominantly found to be associated with bird pollination, while its single-character-state variant, 11010 (blue spiral), different in having an absence of pigment pattern,

Fig. 2. (caption on next page)

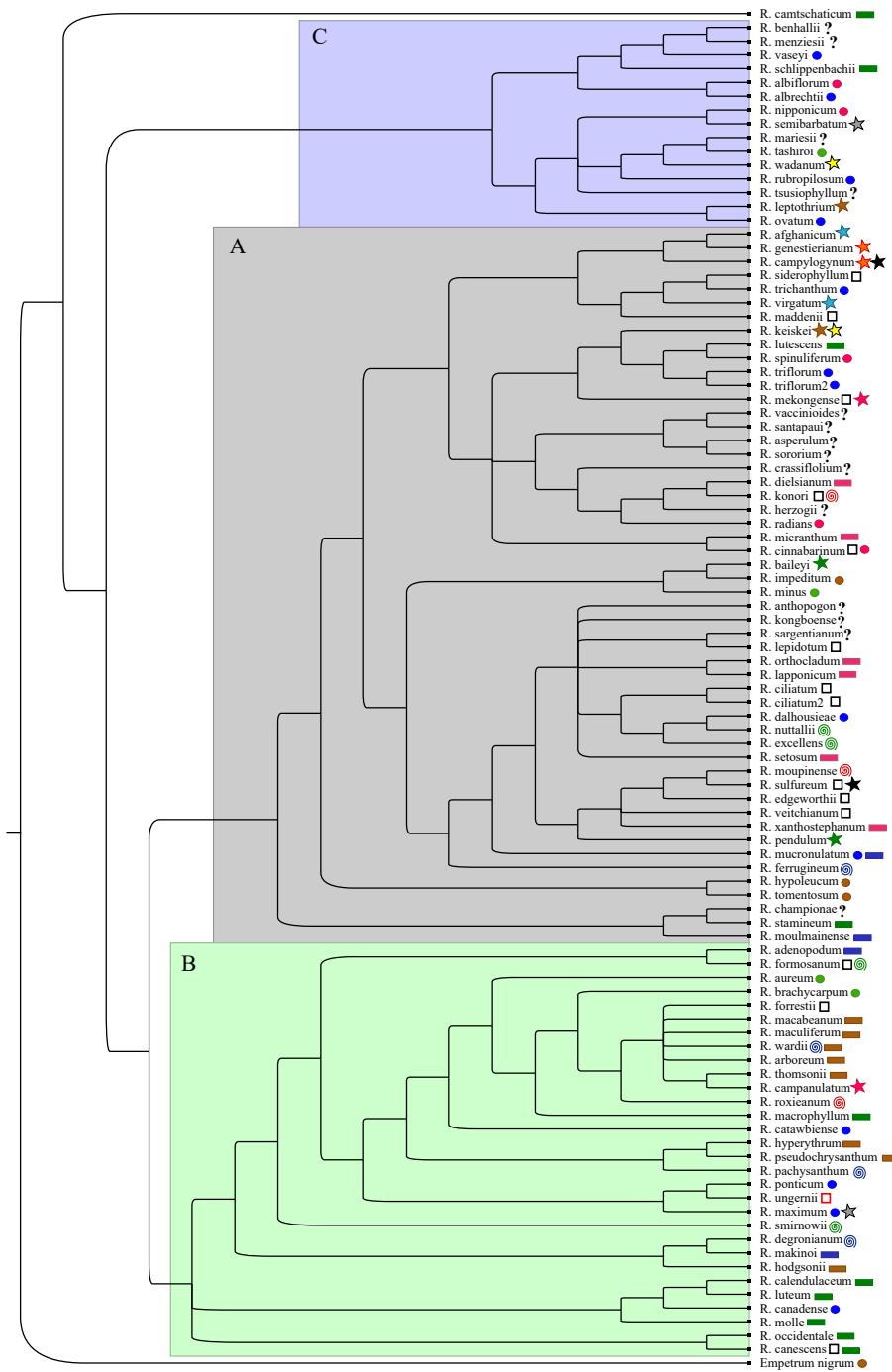


Fig. 2. Distribution of character-complex (Cc) states on a phylogenetic tree of *Rhododendron* species. The three major clades A, B and C are coloured grey, green, and blue. Clades A and B comprise two major subgenera *Rhododendron* and *Hymenanthes* respectively. The different character-complex states that receive representation on the tree have been indicated through various coloured symbols of filled-in circles, rectangles, spirals, stars and hollow squares. An occurrence of these coloured symbols beside a taxon name shows the Cc state of the species. Eleven species names, each accompanied with two Cc state symbols, indicate presence of polymorphism in these species. The set of representing species includes the outgroup species. Species on the tree (14 in number) for which Cc state could not be ascertained are shown accompanied with the special symbol '?'. Please refer to Table 1 to find a list of all the Cc states that have found occurrence, i.e., representation, in the *Rhododendron* species studied. The coloured symbols reveal how the Cc states are differently represented on the tree: some CC states find representation in all major clades, some more in only one major clade, while many more do not find any representation at all. Out of the 108 theoretically possible Cc states, only 33 Cc states (less than 1/3rd) can be seen to be exhibited in the 82 coded *Rhododendron* species studied here.

---

was found to be associated with both bird and insect pollination. Another example, from the literature, of a Cc state that shows possible association with bird pollination is 11111 (red spiral), which in totality is slightly less monosymmetric (stamens are loosely bundled) than the predominantly bird-pollinated character-complex state 11011 (brown rectangle) in which stamens are bundled. This suggests that pollinator associations in some cases are spread over multiple Cc states, like with 11111 and 11011, suggesting interesting groups or suites of traits for pollination syndrome study, and this might also mean that some minor trait transitions do not affect pollinator associations. One can also note that unlike the Cc state 11011, which is confined to *Hymenanthes*, the Cc state 11111 is found to be more widely distributed on the phylogenetic tree, occurring in two large clades formed of subgenera *Hymenanthes* and *Rhododendron*. For the Cc state 00001 (green rectangle), which was found common to clades A, B and C, and was associated in general with insect pollination, it can be remarked, as earlier, that it is characterized by strongest evidence of monosymmetry. Two representing species were found to be associated with butterfly pollination; of these, *R. nudiflorum* shows polymorphism in the flexion of style, with both reflexed and deflexed styles present. Here, the style is initially deflexed during the male stage, and in the female stage, it flexes abaxially and becomes reflexed. This type of stylar movement is thought to help ensure cross-pollination and to minimize self-pollination (Leppik 1974).

Table 2 lists a representable character-complex (Cc) state 02010 (red double asterisk) not represented on our *Rhododendron* species phylogenetic tree. This Cc state gives at least one example that supports the assertion that there do exist more representable Cc states over the full genus *Rhododendron* than are actually represented on our phylogenetic tree. When one notes that our phylogenetic tree sampling was only of about 10-17% of the total species diversity in *Rhododendron* (depending on 1000 or

**Table 2.** Character-complex (Cc) states examined, *Rhododendron* species representing them, their associated pollinator types, insect or bird (highlighted through colour), including pollinator species names and plant species altitudinal range. <sup>Q</sup> indicates 25 new *Rhododendron* species for which Cc state scoring is provided, i.e., in addition to the species from Berry *et al.* (2018). These species were included to utilize available pollinator information for them, and to analyze resultant trait (Cc state) - pollinator group associations (shown through use of the symbol ' $\leftrightarrow$ ').  $\ddagger$  stands for www.hirsutum.info, our source for altitudinal range data. <sup>E</sup> indicates new representable Cc state (namely, 02010, here accompanied with a new symbol 'red double asterisk' i.e.,  $^{**}$ ) found in addition to the Cc states observed in the 96 species from Berry *et al.* (2018). This underlines that the addition of 25 *Rhododendron* species does add to the total number of represented Cc states in our study.

Floral Cc state (with attributed symbol)	Representative <i>Rhododendron</i> Species, known associated pollinators, and species altitudinal ranges	Reference
11010 	<sup>Q</sup> <i>R. cyanocarpum</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Insect pollinators [Bumble bees: <i>Bombus festivus</i> and <i>B. richardsiellus</i> ]	Ma <i>et al.</i> 2015
	<i>R. cyanocarpum</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Bird pollinators [ <i>Phylloscopus affinis</i> , <i>Pycnonotus jocosus monticola</i> ]. (3400-4000 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017
	<i>R. ferrugineum</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Insect pollinators [Honey bees and Bumble bees]. (1600-2200 m)	Escaravage and Wagner 2004; <a href="http://www.iucnredlist.org">http://www.iucnredlist.org</a>
	<i>R. wardii</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Insect pollinator(s) (Bird pollination suggested!). (2700-4300 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; $\ddagger$
11011 	<sup>Q</sup> <i>R. barbatum</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Bird pollinator [ <i>Zosterops japonicas</i> ]. (2400-3700 m)	Huang 2011; $\ddagger$
	<sup>Q</sup> <i>R. beesianum</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Bird pollinators [ <i>Aethopyga gouldiae</i> , <i>Phylloscopus affinis</i> , <i>Zosterops japonicas</i> ]. (3000-4400 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; $\ddagger$
	<sup>Q</sup> <i>R. delavayi</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Bird pollinators [ <i>Heterophasia melanoleuca</i> , <i>Pycnonotus jocosus monticola</i> ]. (2200-2500 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017
	<sup>Q</sup> <i>R. ellottii</i> $\leftrightarrow$ Bird pollinator [ <i>Heterophasia pulchella</i> ] and Insect pollinators [Carpenter bees, <i>Xylocopa</i> spp.]. (2400-2700 m)	Jing <i>et al.</i> 2015; $\ddagger$

Table 2 continued on next page

Table 2 continued

11011 cont.	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. floccigerum</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinator [ <i>Bombus spp.</i> ] and <b>Bird</b> pollinators [ <i>Aethopyga gouldiae</i> , <i>Garrulax affinis</i> , <i>Heterophasia melanoleuca</i> , and <i>Yuhina diademata</i> ]. (2700-4000 m)	Georgian <i>et al.</i> 2015; ¥
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. lacteum</i> ↔ <b>Bird</b> pollinators [ <i>Aethopyga ignicauda</i> , <i>Pycnonotus jocosus monticola</i> ]. (3000-4000 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; ¥
	<i>R. macabeanum</i> ↔ <b>Bird</b> pollinators [ <i>Yuhina spp.</i> ]. (2400-3000 m)	Jing <i>et al.</i> 2015; ¥
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. neriflorum</i> ↔ <b>Bird</b> pollinators [ <i>A. ignicauda</i> , <i>P. jocosus monticola</i> ]. (2550-3600 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. rex</i> ↔ <b>Bird</b> pollinators [ <i>A. ignicauda</i> , <i>P. affinis</i> ]. (3000-4300 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; ¥
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. sinogrande</i> ↔ <b>Bird</b> pollinators [ <i>A. ignicauda</i> , <i>Yuhina occipitalis</i> ]. (2100-3400 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; ¥
	<i>R. wardii</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinator(s) ( <b>Bird</b> pollination suggested!). (2700-4300 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; ¥
00101	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. farrerae</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinators [ <i>Bombus eximius</i> and <i>Xylocopa spp.</i> ]	Ng and Corlett 2000
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. indicum</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinators [bees and butterflies]	Tagane <i>et al.</i> 2008
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. kaempferi</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinators [Butterflies and Honey bees]. (0-1200 m)	Yokogawa and Hotta 1995; ¥
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. macrosepalum</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinators [Bumblebee: <i>Bombus ardens ardens</i> ]	Sugiura 2012
	<i>R. ponticum</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinators [Bumblebees and Carpenter bees]. (0-1800 m)	Stout <i>et al.</i> 2006; ¥
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. reticulatum</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinators [Beefly: <i>Bombylius major</i> ]. (0-1800 m)	Sugiura 2012; ¥
	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. simsii</i> ↔ <b>Insect</b> pollinator(s). (300-2400 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; Ng and Corlett 2000; ¥

Table 2 continued on next page

Table 2 continued

00201	★	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. hongkongense</i> ↔ Insect pollinators [ <i>Bombus eximius</i> and <i>Xylocopa</i> spp.]	Ng and Corlett 2000
		<i>R. semibarbatum</i> ↔ Insect pollinators [Bumblebees: <i>Bombus ardens</i> and <i>Bombus honshuensis</i> . (200-1000 m)]	Ono <i>et al.</i> 2008
01111	●	<i>R. aureum</i> ↔ Insect pollinators [Bumblebee queens and flies]. (1500-2700 m)	Hirao <i>et al.</i> 2006; ¥
00001	■	<i>R. calendulaceum</i> ↔ Insect pollinators [Butterflies: <i>Papilio glaucus</i> and <i>Speyeria cybele</i> ]. (200-1000 m)	Epps <i>et al.</i> 2015; ¥
		<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. nudiflorum</i> ↔ Insect pollinators [Syrphid fly: <i>Doros aequalis</i> , and Butterflies]	Leppik 1974
11111	◎	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. clementinae</i> ↔ Bird pollinators [ <i>Aethopyga gouldiae</i> , <i>Phylloscopus affinis</i> ]. (3300-4200 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017
02121	★	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. trichocladum</i> ↔ Insect pollinator(s). (3200–3600 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017
12120	★	<i>R. virgatum</i> ↔ Insect pollinator(s). (2200–2800 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017
10100	★	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. kiusianum</i> ↔ Insect pollinator(s) [Bees]. (1200-1700 m)	Yokogawa and Hotta 1995; ¥
10101	■	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. kiusianum</i> ↔ Insect pollinator(s) [Bees]. (1200-1700 m)	Yokogawa and Hotta 1995; ¥
		<i>R. moulmainense</i> ↔ Insect pollinator(s)	Ng and Corlett 2000
00021	□	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. nudiflorum</i> ↔ Insect pollinators [Syrphid fly: <i>Doros aequalis</i> , and Butterflies]	Leppik 1974
11211	□	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. oreotrephe</i> s ↔ Bird pollinators [ <i>Aethopyga gouldiae</i> , <i>Phylloscopus affinis</i> ]. (2700-4300 m)	Huang <i>et al.</i> 2017; ¥
02010	**	<sup>♀</sup> <i>R. carringtoniae</i> ↔ Insect pollinators [Butterflies]	Leppik 1974

600 as the total count of the species in the genus), this seems unsurprising, though corroborated by a simple example.

As suggested by a study of 15 *Rhododendron* species (Huang *et al.* 2017), other published works, and additional altitudinal data from online sources, it can be inferred that in general, bird pollination is found in those species of *Rhododendron* that are at higher altitudes when compared to insect pollinated rhododendrons (Table 2). Our own field observations in the Sikkim Himalayas also indicated that flowers with the Cc state 11011 (brown rectangle) are found to be primarily visited by bird pollinated species unique to *Hymenathes*, having an altitudinal range of 3000 to 4500 m, and are inferred to be predominantly pollinated by birds in Table 2. No pollinator information is available for flowers with the Cc state 12210 (pink rectangle), e.g., *R. setosum*, which occurs at altitudes of up to 5000 m.

## Conclusion

We have demonstrated a novel method structure of observing morphological characters and their traits or character states in *Rhododendron*, by combining characters into a character-complex (Cc) that has many Cc states or suite of traits. We find for the first time signals of pollination syndromes in *Rhododendron*.

Subtle changes in form and structure of *Rhododendron* flowers, like any group of angiosperms displaying such diversity, can be variously explored and analyzed for study of the evolution of plant-pollinator interaction. Questions related especially to our work and still to be addressed include “What makes these character-complex states so labile? Out of so many possible combinations of Cc states, why should there be only a few that seem to be actually represented in the genus *Rhododendron*? Presumably, these questions relate to the origin and development of morpho-states, and their feasibility and non-feasibility in character morphospace in the context of the evolution of groups and subgroups of the genus. Although there is obvious and expected overlap in the pollinator types visiting flowers with different, close and not-so-close, Cc states, there are noticeable morpho-signals in these morpho-states that suggest predominant pollinator associations. This paper admittedly does not delve deeply into this question. As for the study of pollination syndromes, each Cc state or a suitable group of such Cc states could be a candidate for the study only if a one-to-one pollinator and Cc state association emerges. It is a limitation of this work that beyond general hints of correspondence no tight pollinator association could be underlined that could lead to intensive pollination syndrome study. Further ecological studies would be needed to extract more information on pollinator association.

Finally, it seems reasonable to state the truism that there is much information inside the morphology of a flower that is intuitively and more straightforwardly observational,

even in the presence of facilitating, modern, and sophisticated tools and techniques. Moreover, a balanced support of intuition and technique can help address more challenging questions in a highly diverse plant group like *Rhododendron*, making this type of exploration even more rewarding.

## Acknowledgement

The authors thank Juliana Medeiros and Glen Jamieson for their initiative, their valuable comments to manuscript drafts, and the invitation to contribute this paper.

## References

- Alm, J., T.E. Ohnmeiss, J. Lanza, and L. Vriesenga. 1990. Preference of cabbage white butterflies and honey bees for nectar that contains amino acids. *Oecologia* 84: 53–57.
- Berry, E., S.K. Sharma, M.K. Pandit, and R. Geeta. 2018. Evolutionary correlation between floral monosymmetry and corolla pigmentation patterns in *Rhododendron*. *Plant Systematics and Evolution* 304: 219–230.
- Citerne H., F. Jabbour, S. Nadot, and C. Damerval. 2010. The evolution of floral symmetry. *Advances in Botanical Research* 54:85-137.
- Epps M.J., S.E. Allison, and L.M. Wolfe. 2015. Reproduction in Flame Azalea (*Rhododendron calendulaceum*, Ericaceae): a rare case of insect wing pollination. *American Naturalist* 186: 294–301.
- Escaravage N., and J. Wagner 2004. Pollination effectiveness and pollen dispersal in a *Rhododendron ferrugineum* (Ericaceae) population. *Plant Biology* 6: 606–615.
- Georgian E., Z. Fang, E. Emshwiller, and A. Pidgeon. 2015. The pollination ecology of *Rhododendron floccigerum* Franchet (Ericaceae) in Weixi, Yunnan Province, China. *Journal of Pollination Ecology* 16: 72–81.
- Hansen D.M., T. Van der Niet, and S.D. Johnson. 2012. Floral signposts: testing the significance of visual ‘nectar guides’ for pollinator behaviour and plant fitness. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences* 279: 634-639.
- Hirao A.S., Y. Kameyama, M. Ohara, Y. Isagi, and G. Kudo. 2006. Seasonal changes in pollinator activity influence pollen dispersal and seed production of the alpine shrub *Rhododendron aureum* (Ericaceae). *Molecular Ecology* 15: 1165–1173.
- Huang Z-H., Y-P. Song, and S-Q. Huang. 2017. Evidence for passerine bird pollination in *Rhododendron* species. *AoB Plants* 9: plx062.
- Jing I., S.K. Chaturvedi, and N. Puro. 2015. Pollination biology of *Rhododendron macabeanum* Watt ex Balfour f. of Ericaceae in Nagaland, India. *Pleione* 9: 465–470.
- Jing I., N. Puro, S.K. Chaturvedi. 2015. Pollination Biology of *Rhododendron ellottii* Watt ex Brandis (Ericaceae). *International Journal of Plant Reproductive Biology* 7:

- Krömer, T., M. Kessler, G. Lohaus, and A.N. Schmidt-Lebuhn, 2008. Nectar sugar composition and concentration in relation to pollination syndromes in Bromeliaceae. *Plant Biology* 10: 502–511.
- Leppik E.E. 1974. Evolutionary interactions between *Rhododendrons*, pollinating insects and Rust Fungi: preliminary report. *Quarterly Bulletin of the American Rhododendron Society* 28: 1–19.
- Medel R., C. Botto-Mahan, and M. Kalin-Arroyo. 2003. Pollinator-mediated selection on the nectar guide phenotype in the Andean monkey flower *Mimulus luteus*. *Ecology* 84:1721-1732.
- Ma Y.P., Z.-K. Wu, K. Dong, W.-B. Sun, and T. Marczewski. 2015. Pollination biology of *Rhododendron cyanocarpum* (Ericaceae): An alpine species endemic to NW Yunnan, China. *Journal of Systematics and Evolution* 53: 63–71.
- Ng S., and R.T. Corlett. 2000. Comparative reproductive biology of the six species of *Rhododendron* (Ericaceae) in Hong Kong, South China. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 78: 221–229.
- Ono A., I. Dohzono, and T. Sugawara. 2008. Bumblebee pollination and reproductive biology of *Rhododendron semibarbatum* (Ericaceae). *Journal of Plant Research* 121: 319–327.
- Perret, M., A. Chautems, R. Spichiger, M. Peixoto, and V. Savolainen. 2001. Nectar sugar composition in relation to pollination syndromes in Sinnningieae (Gesneriaceae). *Annals of Botany* 87: 267–273.
- Stout J.C., J.A.N. Parnell, J. Arroyo, T. Crowe 2006. Pollination ecology and seed production of *Rhododendron ponticum* in native and exotic habitat. *Biodiversity Conservation* 15: 755–777.
- Sugiura S. 2012. Flower-visiting insect communities on two closely related *Rhododendron* species flowering in different seasons. *Arthropod-Plant Interactions* 6: 333–344.
- Tagane S., M. Hiramatsu, and H. Okubo. 2008. Hybridization and asymmetric introgression between *Rhododendron eriocarpum* and *R. Indicum* on Yakushima Island, southwest Japan. *Journal of Plant Research* 121: 387–395.
- Yokogawa M., and M.Hotta. 1995. Taxonomical notes on plants of southern Japan II. Variation in the *Rhododendron obtusum* group in the Kirishima Mts., southern Kyushu. *Acta Phytotaxonomica et Geobotanica* 46: 165–183.

# **Section: Genetics and Evolution**

## **Chapter 7**

---

# **A Look at Hybrid Zones in *Rhododendron*, with Particular Reference to F1-Dominated Hybrid Zones (F1DZs)**

**Richard I. Milne**  
**University of Edinburgh**  
**United Kingdom**



### **Introduction**

Rhododendrons are famous for their ability to hybridize, and were among the first garden plants subjected to intensive between-species breeding programs during the 19<sup>th</sup> Century. Where hybridization occurs in the wild, it can lead to large populations of what are termed hybrid derivatives, i.e., individuals that have more than one species in their immediate ancestry. A patch of habitat containing large numbers of hybrid derivatives is termed a “hybrid zone,” and where those hybrids display great variation in form and genetic composition, as a result of hybridization having proceeded beyond the first generation, the hybrid population is also termed a “hybrid swarm.” Where hybrids exist in any quantity, a hybrid swarm is the most usual configuration for the hybrid population, for reasons explained below. Many hybrid zones in *Rhododendron*, however, exhibit highly unusual population structures, so this review will focus, in particular, upon a form of hybrid zone that is relatively common in *Rhododendron* but extremely rare outside it: the F<sub>1</sub>-dominated hybrid zone (F<sub>1</sub>DZ).

### **Natural Hybrid Formation in *Rhododendron***

Only relatively closely related species are capable of forming hybrids, and even this ability varies greatly across genera and families (Ellstrand *et al.* 1996, Whitney *et al.* 2010). *Rhododendron* species are among the least faithful of all, and as a rule of thumb *Rhododendron* species tend to be able to form fertile hybrids with most or all members of their own subgenus. For example, *R. ponticum* is separated from most other species

of its subgenus, *Hymenanthes*, by around ten million years of evolution (Milne 2004) but forms fertile hybrids with all three of the *Hymenanthes* species that it grows with in the wild (*caucasicum*, *smirnowii* and *ungernii*; Milne *et al.* 1999), and many more in cultivation (Milne and Abbott 2000, van Ree 2015, Milne 2017). Hybrids between subgenera can occur but are rare, often sterile and in many cases only exist due to deliberate human efforts, e.g., subgenus *Hymenanthes* × *Pentanthera* (Milne 2017), subgenus *Tsutsusi* × former genus *Menziesia* (Kita *et al.* 2005), and *Tsutsusi* × subgenus *Rhododendron* section *Schistanthe* (Eeckhaut *et al.* 2013). Evidence of past hybridization and gene flow between species (introgression) may often be detected with molecular markers (Huang *et al.* 2011; and see Table 1 for more *Rhododendron* examples), and ancient hybridization is indicated for subgenus *Hymenanthes* by strong discordance between relationships indicated by cpDNA and those from morphology (Milne *et al.* 2010) or nuclear RPB2 markers (Goetsch *et al.* 2005). Several species appear to have been derived via hybrid speciation; these include the vireyas *R. sarcodes*, *R. arenicola*, *R. pseudobuxifolium* and *R. staphianum* (Goetsch *et al.* 2011), and probably *R. balangense* in *Hymenanthes* (Milne, 2017). This phenomenon should not be confused with early generation hybrids being erroneously classified as species, which has happened many times in *Rhododendron*.

The question, therefore, is not so much why *Rhododendron* hybrids form, but how species in general avoid merging, or being swamped by their own hybrids in the wild. A systematic survey of breeding barriers between *R. cyanocarpum* and *R. delavayi* revealed considerable overlap in flowering time and pollinating species, the latter despite *R. delavayi* being more adapted for bird pollination and *R. cyanocarpum* more adapted for bees (Ma *et al.* 2016). Hybrid seed had lower viability than non-hybrid seed, but enough would germinate to make this a weak barrier as well (Ma *et al.* 2016). More significant, perhaps, was that conspecific pollen formed pollen tubes faster than heterospecific pollen (a well-known mechanism, e.g., see Arnold 2000), meaning no hybrids would be formed if the two kinds of pollen were deposited at the same time (Ma *et al.* 2016). However, many flowers went unpollinated, meaning there would be opportunities for heterospecific pollen to be the only pollen that reached a flower, allowing hybrids to be sired (Ma *et al.* 2016). The most significant barrier was pollinator constancy: individual insects tended to be faithful to a single species and were not observed switching between them (Ma *et al.* 2016). Hence, some *Rhododendron* in the wild may rely on insect behavior, and the fact that they look different to insect visitors, in order to minimize pollen transfer between species, and hence hybridization.

We cannot be certain how universal this effect is, but it is likely to be highly significant for any species pair where the parents have very different looking flowers (e.g., *R. speciferum* and *R. spinuliferum*), where they tend to be spatially separated, or both (e.g.

Table 1: Cases of hybridization in *Rhododendron* where information exists on hybrid zone structure and/or introgression.

Parent Species	Habitat for parents	Habitat for hybrids	Hybrid zone structure	Backcrossing	Introgression	Evidence	Reference
<i>flammeum</i> X <i>canescens</i>	Well-drained bluffs; floodplains or low wet forests.	Mesic forest on slope overlooking artificial lake.	Not determined	Class not determined	Into <i>flammeum</i>	cpDNA	Kron <i>et al.</i> 1993
<i>smirnowii</i> X <i>ungermii</i>	Usually on rocks 1500 - 2300 m; mostly in woodland, 1200 - 1850 m.	Natural to mildly degraded vegetation	Not determined; scattered individuals	Class not determined	Into <i>ungermii</i>	rDNA RFLP marker, flower colour	Milne <i>et al.</i> 1999
<i>ponticum</i> X <i>ungermii</i>	Woodland below 1800 m; mostly in woodland 1200 - 1850 m.	Natural to mildly degraded vegetation	Not determined; scattered individuals	Class not determined	Both ways	cpDNA in <i>ungermii</i> ; rDNA RFLP marker and calyx lobes in <i>ponticum</i>	Milne <i>et al.</i> 1999
<i>ponticum</i> X <i>caucasicum</i> (at Çamlıhemşin, Turkey)	Woodland below 1800 m; alpine slopes above 1700 m	Natural, bottom of steep gulley with late-lying snow, c. 1700 m	Morphological variety suggests a segregating hybrid swarm	Both directions (probable)	To <i>ponticum</i> (very rare)	rDNA RFLP marker	Milne <i>et al.</i> 1999
<i>ponticum</i> X <i>caucasicum</i> (at Tiryali Dag, Turkey)	Woodland below 1800 m; alpine slopes above 1700 m	Slopes between parents, 1900 - 2200 m	All F <sub>1</sub> s (F <sub>1</sub> DZ)	None detected here.	None detected here	Nuclear RAPD markers	Milne <i>et al.</i> 2003
<i>eriocarpum</i> X <i>indicum</i>	Coastal; riversides.	Seaside area.	Not determined, but variation suggests a segregating hybrid swarm	Both directions (probable)	To <i>eriocarpum</i> (implied)	No direct evidence given; PCo on AFLPs strongly implies backcrossing.	Tagane <i>et al.</i> 2008
<i>spiciferum</i> X <i>spinuliferum</i>	Unclear.	Often disturbed	Hybrid swarms with ample backcrossing	Both directions	Likely but not confirmed	Microsatellites and cpDNA.	Yan <i>et al.</i> 2017.
<i>kaempferi</i> X <i>kiusanum</i>	440 – 600 m; 1030 – 1650 m at hybrid zone on Mt. Kirishima	Slopes at intermediate altitudes. Hybrid zone known to be >200 years old.	Morphological variety suggests a segregating hybrid swarm	Class not determined	Ancient, into <i>kiusanum</i>	cpDNA	Kobayashi <i>et al.</i> 2000; 2007.
<i>ferrugineum</i> X <i>hirsutum</i>	Acid soils; basic soil.	Intermediate pH.	Some sites, 57% F <sub>1</sub> s and otherwise mainly backcrosses to <i>hirsutum</i> ; others more mixed	Mostly or only towards <i>hirsutum</i>	Only towards <i>hirsutum</i>	RAPD markers, cpDNA.	Milne and Abbott, 2008; Bruni <i>et al.</i> , 2016.
<i>Phaeochrysum</i> X <i>aganniphum</i> (Baima Shan 'Hyb-1')	Both mountain slopes, but <i>aganniphum</i> higher up	Mountain slopes, mixed with both parents.	Hybrid swarm with many backcrosses.	Most or all towards <i>aganniphum</i>	Probable in both directions, at least in the past.	AFLP markers.	Marczewski <i>et al.</i> 2015
<i>Phaeochrysum</i> X <i>aganniphum</i> (Baima Shan 'Hyb-2')	Both mountain slopes, but <i>aganniphum</i> higher up	Mountain slopes, away from parents.	Either all F <sub>1</sub> s, or a self-contained, possibly stabilizing hybrid swarm.	None detected here.	Unlikely at this site.	AFLP markers.	Marczewski <i>et al.</i> 2015
<i>Pericymenoides</i> X <i>atlanticum</i>	Upland or sandy woods, bluffs, stream banks; sandy pinelands & wet places	Not specified	Not determined, probably hybrid swarm.	Both ways	Probably both ways, not confirmed	Morphometric analysis and flavonoids.	King, 2000.
<i>ripense</i> X <i>macrosepalum</i>	Riverside; forest.	Not specified	Not specified	Class not determined	Into <i>ripense</i> (one sample)	CpDNA and nrDNA.	Yokoyama <i>et al.</i> , 2012.
<i>delavayi</i> X <i>irroratum</i>	Both form woods on slopes in the area.	Wide area, mildly disturbed	Probable hybrid swarm	Both ways	Not examined	Detailed morphology	Marczewski <i>et al.</i> 2016

*R. ponticum* and *R. caucasicum*); however both of these examples still produce hybrids in large numbers (Yan *et al.* 2017; Milne *et al.* 2003). Moreover, it is unclear how strongly this barrier would apply where the parent species have similar looking flowers (at least to human eyes), and/or sometimes occur intermixed, as in *R. ferrugineum* and *R. hirsutum* (Milne and Abbott 2008), and *R. aganniphum* and *R. phaeochrysum* (Marczewski *et al.* 2015). This barrier was observed to break down easily between *R. eriocarpum* and *R. indicum*, for example, leading to frequent hybrid zones where they intermix (Tagane *et al.* 2008).

In other species pairs, temporal isolation might be more significant. For example, *R. ferrugineum* flowers around a month earlier than *R. hirsutum*, and they barely overlap (Milne and Abbott 2008). The last flowers of *ferrugineum* and the first of *hirsutum* might, however, be outnumbered by pollen of the other species, weakening the effect of the pollen tube growth speed barrier, and hence promoting hybrid formation during the brief period of overlap. Both species are protandrous (i.e., stamens mature before female parts), and hence the last stigmas of *R. ferrugineum* should therefore receive a lot of *R. hirsutum* pollen, whereas when the first stigmas of *R. hirsutum* become receptive, there should already be conspecific pollen about. This should lead to *ferrugineum* being the mother of most hybrids, because cpDNA is maternally inherited. However, hybrids normally have *R. hirsutum* cpDNA (= chloroplast DNA; Bruni *et al.* 2016), with *R. hirsutum* normally the hybrid mother, unless inheritance is paternal, as reported in crosses involving *Menziesia* (now included within *Rhododendron*) *multiflora* (Kita *et al.* 2005).

Floral morphology may contribute to isolation in some cases, e.g., different style lengths in section *Schistanthe* (previously *Vireya*; Williams & Rouse 1988), although floral adaptation to different pollinator guilds did not seem to have a big effect on hybridization between *R. delavayi* and *R. cyanocarpum* (Ma *et al.* 2016). Likewise, dramatically different flower structure between *R. spiciferum* and *R. spinuliferum* has not prevented the formation of at least 15 populations of hybrids between them (Yan *et al.* 2017).

Loss of hybrid fitness is a well-known mechanism for keeping species separate (Rieseberg and Carney 1998), but *Rhododendron* hybrids are often both fertile and vigorous. Where both species are specialized for particular pollinator types or habitats, hybrids may find neither suitable habitat nor pollinator, as Danet (2012) suggested for vireyas. Habitat transitions, however, often provide ideal habitats for hybrids (see below), and if certain pollinators are shared between parents, then these are likely to visit the hybrids as well (Tagane *et al.* 2008; Ma *et al.* 2014, 2016).

In contrast to these natural species barriers, human disturbance promotes hybridization

in numerous ways: expanding species ranges, altering habitats, introducing or removing pollinators, increasing wildfires, altering climate and hence phenology, or changing the ratio of parent species (Anderson 1948, 1949; Semple and Semple 1977; Rieseberg and Carney 1998; Bleeker and Hurka 2001; Lamont *et al.* 2003; Guo 2014; Ortego *et al.* 2017; Grabenstein and Taylor 2018). Moreover, altered and especially disturbed habitats may favor hybrids, and especially post- $F_1$  hybrid derivatives, over parental species (Abbott 1992, Arnold 1997; Rieseberg and Carney 1998). Disturbance has probably promoted hybridization in *Rhododendron spiciferum*  $\times$  *R. spinuliferum* (Li-Jun Yan, pers. comm.) and some vireyas (Danet 2012) but clear-cut examples of this are quite rare in *Rhododendron* overall. This may be because the signature of disturbance becomes harder to detect with time, making it harder to link with hybridization in relatively long-lived groups, like *Rhododendron*. Humans have been disturbing habitats for millenia, especially in densely populated places like China, and the extent to which this has promoted natural *Rhododendron* hybridization has barely been addressed.

Wherever hybridization proceeds beyond the first generation, the potential exists for introgression—gene flow from one species into another. Numerous examples of this are known in *Rhododendron* (Table 1), including the unusual example of *Rhododendron ponticum* in the British Isles, which underwent introgression from multiple species in cultivation, before escaping into the wild (Milne and Abbott 2000). Furthermore, some pairs or groups of species might continuously exchange genetic material, while remaining distinct through ongoing selection on those parts of the genome that code for morphological and ecological differences (Wu 2001). This might apply between *Rhododendron ferrugineum* and *R. hirsutum* (Milne and Abbott 2008, Bruni *et al.* 2016), and strong selection upon particular genetic markers has been detected in hybrid populations of *R. aganniphum*  $\times$  *R. phaeochrysum* (Marczewski *et al.* 2015). It is highly plausible that ongoing interspecific gene flow might be the norm for many *Rhododendron* species pairs, but this process makes the genetic material of the species concerned increasingly hard to distinguish, and is therefore hard to detect.

In *Rhododendron* more than any other genus, there exists one other extraordinary mechanism that can limit the gene flow between hybridizing species, and that is the exclusion of later generation hybrids by populations of extremely fit  $F_1$ s. This is the only mechanism that can explain the existence of  $F_1$ -dominated hybrid zones (Milne *et al.* 2003), and these will now be considered in detail.

### **$F_1$ -Dominated Hybrid Zones ( $F_1$ DZs).**

$F_1$ DZs are hybrid zones in which all or most hybrids are  $F_1$ s, despite those  $F_1$ s being highly fertile (Milne *et al.* 2003). They tend to form on undisturbed, transitional habitats between those of the parent species, and typically  $F_1$ s will occur in large

numbers, occupying most or all suitable sites. This type of hybrid zone is extremely rare, with only up to ten documented cases across all land plants (Table 2), but it is disproportionately common in *Rhododendron*.

Hybridization always begins with the formation of an  $F_1$  hybrid. Such events are relatively rare because all species have mechanisms that favor crossing with their own kind, as discussed above. Once an  $F_1$  is formed, however, then any and all seed it produces will be hybrid derivatives—either  $F_2$  or backcrosses. The same applies to all its descendants, and hence if the  $F_1$  is fertile, then later generation derivatives (here collectively termed post- $F_1$ s for simplicity) can quickly be produced in large numbers (Rieseberg and Carney 1998). This leads to a “hybrid swarm” of post- $F_1$ s, and is the reason why such swarms are a common result of producing fit  $F_1$  hybrids that can reproduce. Among post- $F_1$ s, and especially  $F_2$ s, every individual inherits a unique combination of alleles from the two parent species, leading to massive variation in both form and ecology between hybrid individuals, a phenomenon termed segregation (Anderson, 1948). This can be seen very dramatically in the Kurume Azaleas, a set of cultivars believed to be derived directly from a hybrid swarm between *R. kiusanum* and *R. kaempferi* (Kobayashi *et al.* 2000, Milne, 2017). Each named cultivar is a particular post- $F_1$  clone, and there is extraordinary variation between them regarding flower colour, size and shape (Fig 1). Therefore naturally formed hybrid swarms tend to exhibit great between-individual variation. There is also often much backcrossing towards one or both parents, further increasing variability (Arnold 1997, Rieseberg and Carney 1998), including among *Rhododendron* (Table 1).

For an  $F_1$ DZ to form, there must be repeated formation of  $F_1$ s in spite of species barriers, but little or no recruitment of post- $F_1$ s. In theory, a simple mechanism for this is  $F_1$  sterility, as seen for example in *Begonia* (Twyford *et al.* 2015), but often such sterility is not total, allowing occasional post- $F_1$ s to form, from which a hybrid swarm might yet be produced.  $F_1$ DZs however contain large numbers of  $F_1$ s, and  $F_1$  fertility has been confirmed in most cases of  $F_1$ DZs in *Rhododendron*, as well as in other taxa (Table 2). A second possible reason a hybrid zone might have only  $F_1$ s is that it is only one generation old, but cases exist where contact is recent but  $F_2$ s have already been formed, e.g., with *Salix* hybrids where glaciers have recently retreated (Gramlich and Hörandl 2016), suggesting that the time window for  $F_1$ -only populations to exist by this mechanism may be quite short. Moreover, all documented  $F_1$ DZs exist on undisturbed habitats, with parent species and sometimes also hybrids (e.g., Jiang *et al.* 2016) appearing to be long-established at the site. It is possible that hybridization could have begun between long-established populations only recently, through a very rare  $F_1$  formation event, but if so, there is no explanation for how large numbers of  $F_1$ s could be formed simultaneously and come to occupy all parts of a narrow band

Table 2: Cases of F<sub>1</sub>-dominated hybrid zones (F<sub>1</sub>DZs) or possible F<sub>1</sub>DZs in *Rhododendron* and other genera. Number given is number of F1s/number of hybrid classes detected in total. Where multiple sites examined, one is given after the other.

Hybrid and parents	Major habitat separation factor for parents	Habitat of F <sub>1</sub> DZ	Location	Proportion of F <sub>1</sub> s among hybrids at site(s)	Do non-F <sub>1</sub> -dominated hybrid zones occur for these species?	F <sub>1</sub> fertility confirmed?	How many F <sub>1</sub> genets examined?	Caveats	Reference
<i>Rhododendron × sochachzeae</i> (= <i>ponticum</i> X <i>caucasicum</i> )	Altitude (very little overlap)	Mountain slopes; F <sub>1</sub> DZs observed between 1900 and 2200 m	Seaward side of mountains along S Coast of Black Sea	100%	Yes, in steep river valleys at lower altitude.	Yes, experimentally	12/12	Small sample (12 genets) examined.	Milne <i>et al.</i> 2003
<i>Rhododendron × intermedium</i> (= <i>ferugineum</i> X <i>hirsumum</i> )	Soil pH	Sites with mixed soil and varying pH	European Alps (F <sub>1</sub> DZs examined were south of Innsbruck).	57% (possibly more).	Yes, in the Italian Alps, perhaps promoted by ski-related disturbance	Yes, experimentally	17/21, 17/30	Full dominance by F <sub>1</sub> s has not been observed.	Milne and Abbott, 2008; Bruni <i>et al.</i> 2016.
<i>Rhododendron × agastum</i> (= <i>irroratum</i> X <i>delavayi</i> )	Altitude, but much overlap	Forested hillside in well preserved vegetation.	Hua Dian Ba near Dali, Yunnan, western China	100%, 94%	Huge hybrid population at Baili is probably a hybrid swarm	Yes, experimentally	14/14, 19/21	Baili data based on morphology only	Zha <i>et al.</i> 2010; Marczewski <i>et al.</i> 2016.
<i>Rhododendron phaeochrysum</i> X <i>aganniphum</i>	Altitude, but much overlap.	Mountain slopes	Baima Shan mountain, Yunnan	Close to 100% but see caveats	Yes – another site on the same mountain exhibits far greater variation among hybrids.	Implied by backcrossing and introgression	35/35 (class not confirmed)	Could also be a population of late generation hybrids in process of homoploid hybrid speciation	Marczewski <i>et al.</i> 2015
<i>Encelia × laciniata</i> (= <i>ventorum</i> X <i>palmeri</i> )	Dune stability and moisture content	Stable leeward dune slopes	Baja California, USA.	Probably 100%	Yes, on disturbed sites nearby	Yes, experimentally	Not determined	F <sub>1</sub> is identified by lack of morphological segregation, and offspring traits, only.	Kyhos <i>et al.</i> 1981.
<i>Viola bissettii</i> X <i>rossii</i>	Slope aspect	Ridge tops, with parents on slopes either side.	Mount Ougi, Central Japan	Between 81% and 95%	None are known	Not tested as yet.	Not determined	Unclear whether selection vs post-F <sub>1</sub> is habitat-	Nagano <i>et al.</i> 2015
<i>Populus × jrtyschensis</i> (= <i>nigra</i> X <i>laurifolia</i> )	Wetness and soil nitrogen.	Floodplains, wth less soil nitrogen than parental habitats	Xinjiang, Western China.	84% or more.	None mentioned.	Seeds observed but viability not determined. Backcrosses prove some viability	187/215 (across 14 sites)	F <sub>1</sub> habitat extreme: wetter, less nitrogen than either parent's.	Jiang <i>et al.</i> 2016.
<i>Phyllocladus caerulea</i> X <i>aleuticum</i>	Altitude	Snowmelt zones on mountains	Taisetsu Mountains, Hokkaido, northern Japan	100% in most sites	None known, but a minority of backcrosses ate some sites.	Yes, experimentally	18/24, 48/57	Authors suspect selection vs post-F <sub>1</sub> is not habitat-mediated	Kameyama <i>et al.</i> 2008, 2011.
<i>Populus canescens</i> (= <i>alba</i> X <i>tremula</i> )	Altitude (alba by rivers, tremula in hills above)	Riverine lowland forest (often naturally disturbed) mixed with <i>P. alba</i> (Europe); along river tributaries (China)	Tisza & Danube rivers in Italy, Austria, Hungary and China respectively.	85%, 74%, 56% (Europe); 79% (China).	None this author is aware of.	Backcrosses both ways shown to be viable.	73/86, 25/34, 9/16, (Europe) 108–137 (China)	Selection vs post-F <sub>1</sub> may be intrinsic. Hybrid zones are naturally disturbed.	Christe <i>et al.</i> 2016 (Europe); Zeng <i>et al.</i> 2016 (China).
<i>Salvia × sylvestris</i> (= <i>pratensis</i> X <i>nemorosum</i> )	Soil drainage: moist earth with humus, dry, slightly elevated ground.	Sides of miniature ridges in undulating meadows.	SE Austria, near Hungarian border.	Unknown. appeared to be high	Unknown.	Yes, experimentally	Not recorded	No hard evidence, based on detailed descriptions of sites now presumed destroyed	Kerner, 1895.

of suitable habitat. Clonal spread does contribute to F<sub>1</sub> dominance within *Phyllocladus* F<sub>1</sub>DZs (Kameyama *et al.* 2008) and to a much lesser extent in *Rhododendron* (Milne *et al.* 2003, Milne and Abbott, 2008) and *Populus × jrtyschensis* (Jiang *et al.* 2016). Outside of F<sub>1</sub>DZs, this process has allowed *Typha × glauca* F<sub>1</sub>s to become invasive in North America (Zapfe and Freeland 2015, Pieper *et al.* 2018). F<sub>1</sub>DZs, however, are consistently shown to contain multiple F<sub>1</sub> genets when examined with molecular markers (Table 2), so clonal spread alone cannot account for their existence.

To establish a large population of fertile F<sub>1</sub>s where they greatly outnumber subsequent generations, it therefore seems necessary that F<sub>1</sub>s would outperform all other genealogical classes (including parents) within the hybrid zone. Certainly they must have habitat-



Figure 1. Twelve of the Kurume Azalea hybrid cultivars raised by Japanese plantsmen and imported to the West by Ernest Wilson. All are clones derived from natural hybrids between *R. kiusianum* and *R. kaempferi*, and illustrate the morphological variation produced by segregation. Top row (L-R): 'Asa-Gasumi', 'Shin utena', 'Saotome'. Second row: 'Katsura no Hana', 'Rasho Mon', 'Yoro Zuyo'. Third row: 'Azuma-Kagami'\*', 'Kiritsubo', 'Shintoki no Hagasane'. Bottom row: 'Seikai'\*', 'Kirin'\*', 'Hinode no Taka'. Asterisks indicate double ("hose-in-hose") corollas, a condition not normal to either parent. All photos by author.

mediated superiority over their parents, because seed of pure parental plants would be produced in far greater numbers than  $F_1$  seed due to the species barriers discussed above. Hence  $F_1$ s can only outnumber their parents if they have a fitness advantage, and the fact that they only do so within a specific habitat band indicates clearly that this advantage is habitat-mediated. Rare cases where  $F_1$  advantage is not habitat-mediated, and  $F_1$ s therefore can invade parental ranges (e.g. *Typha × glauca*; Zapfe and Freeland 2015, Pieper *et al.* 2018) fall outside of the definition of  $F_1$ DZs.

$F_1$ DZ formation requires superiority of  $F_1$ s over post- $F_1$ s, as well as the parents. This could in theory be intrinsic (i.e., independent of habitat) or habitat-mediated, because either could explain the absence of post- $F_1$ s from a population of fertile  $F_1$ s. Intrinsic fitness can be compared for seedlings using common garden trials (e.g., Criste *et al.* 2016). Theoretically, habitat-mediated fitness can be assessed using reciprocal transplants or culture under artificial habitat conditions for common garden trials. These run up against several problems, however. First,  $F_1$ DZs tend to occupy undisturbed habitats, whereas disturbance tends to favor post- $F_1$ s, and so transplantations and artificial conditions will inevitably introduce confounding effects by increasing soil disturbance and potentially favoring post- $F_1$ s. My own attempts to recreate soil conditions for hybrid class of *R. × intermedium* could not replicate wild conditions (Milne and Abbott 2008). Instead, only experiments where seeds are sown in natural habitats offer a realistic test for habitat-mediated fitness. A second problem is that the *Rhododendron* species involved tend to be long-lived, meaning that in most cases a meaningful experiment would take many years to complete. An exception so far may be with *Viola*, one herbaceous genus known to form extant  $F_1$ DZs (Table 2), for which the results of proposed transplant experiments are keenly awaited (Nagano *et al.* 2015). The practicalities of transplant experiments are further complicated by the remote nature of most  $F_1$ DZ sites, a consequence of these occurring on pristine natural habitats (Table 2). Finally, the rate of successful recruitment from *Rhododendron* seeds must be well under one in a million (see discussion below), and it may well be that, in most years, there is no natural recruitment at all in a stable population, unless the weather for recruitment is exactly right. If so, sowing experiments could easily yield zero survivors in a typical year, regardless of hybrid class or habitat. For now, direct evidence from common garden experiments concerns only intrinsic fitness (Criste *et al.* 2016), and the only evidence so far for habitat-mediated superiority of  $F_1$ s has been inferred by looking at hybrid zones between the same species, but in different conditions.

If  $F_1$ DZs are maintained by habitat-mediated selection against post- $F_1$ s, then we would expect to see different hybrid zone compositions where the same species meet in different habitats, and this is exactly what is observed. The first detailed description of an  $F_1$ DZ, although they did not coin the term, was by Kyhos *et al.* (1981). Populations

of  $F_1$  hybrids (*Encelia × laciniata*; Asteraceae) were found on leeward slopes of sand dunes and nowhere else, whereas in more disturbed habitats, hybrid swarms occurred, dominated by post- $F_1$ s. In the Turkish *Rhododendron × sochadzeae*,  $F_1$ -dominated hybrid zones occupy a narrow altitudinal band separating the parent species, but a small hybrid population dominated by backcrosses was found lower down, in a steep-sided stream valley where late-lying snow apparently creates an unusual microclimate (Milne *et al.* 1999, 2003). In the case of the Chinese *R. × agastum*, the ecological separation between parents *R. delavayi* and *R. irroratum* is less clear. A role for the environment is implied because hybrid zones contain only  $F_1$ s at Hua Dian Ba near Dali (Zha *et al.* 2010) but form massive hybrid swarms at Baili (Marczewski *et al.* 2016). In all these three cases, therefore,  $F_1$ s thrive in habitats intermediate between those of the parents, while post- $F_1$ s do better when disturbance or another factor has created a different habitat. This means that the full criteria for  $F_1$ DZs have been satisfied as given by Milne *et al.* (2003):  $F_1$ s dominate the hybrid zone with clear evidence that they are fertile, and that their superiority over other classes is habitat-mediated.

Another possible case concerns *Salvia × sylvestris*, which occurred with its parent species in undulating meadows south of Vienna, occupying sites of intermediate drainage (Kerner 1895). It was >60% fertile (Kerner 1895), and populations with many post- $F_1$ s occur elsewhere. Unfortunately, this population appears to have been destroyed (R. Milne, pers. obs.), so we may now never know for sure.

Hybrid zones between *Rhododendron ferrugineum* and *R. hirsutum* in the European Alps satisfy all the above conditions, except that they contain 56%  $F_1$ s plus many backcrosses (but only to *R. hirsutum*). The parents are separated by their pH preferences, and hybrid zones (*Rhododendron × intermedium*) occur in mosaic habitats where soil types mix and pH varies dramatically on a small spatial scale (Milne and Abbott 2008). Hence  $F_1$ s might always outcompete other classes on soil patches with suitable pH, whereas different soil types support other classes. The exact proportion of  $F_1$ s varies between sites, again implying a controlling role for local habitat. Furthermore, in other sites where the role of human disturbance seems to be greater, the proportion of  $F_1$ s decreases (Bruni *et al.* 2016). Outside of *Rhododendron*, *Populus × canescens* (= *P. alba × P. tremula*) forms  $F_1$ DZs of between 56% and 85%  $F_1$ s in both Europe (Christe *et al.* 2016) and China (Zeng *et al.* 2016) (see Table 2).

*Rhododendron aganniphum × R. phaeochrysum* forms a population of fertile hybrids that do not intergrade with either parent, but the possibility has not been eliminated that these are a population of post- $F_1$  hybrids, stabilizing on their way to becoming a new hybrid species (Marczewski *et al.* 2015).

The last three known cases all involve large populations of  $F_1$  hybrids in very

specific habitats, but for these no cases are known of hybrid zones elsewhere with a different structure, where post- $F_1$ s dominate, and so the nature of their  $F_1$  advantage is uncertain. Fertile *Phyllodoce*  $F_1$ s consistently dominate snowmelt gradients between the parent species (Kameyama and Kudo 2011). The *Viola* species *bissetii* and *rossii* occur on opposite-facing slopes, with  $F_1$  hybrids dominating one ridge top between them (Nagano *et al.* 2015).  $F_1$ s of *Populus × jrtyschensis* occupy habitats that have lower nitrogen content than those of either parent (Jiang *et al.* 2016). This could mean  $F_1$ s here either prefer a non-intermediate habitat or that the habitat is intermediate in other unknown ways.

Had I myself not chanced upon the atypical hybrid zone at Çamlıhemşin, Turkey, during an earlier field trip (see Milne *et al.* 1999), I would have been far less sure about the importance of habitat for *R. × sochadzeae*. Future detection of hybrid swarms in any of the three cases above could show that  $F_1$  advantage is habitat mediated, but it is far harder to prove that such swarms cannot form. Hence intrinsic  $F_1$  advantage must instead be tested by common garden experiments across a range of conditions as Criste *et al.* (2016) have started to do.

Overall, these examples illustrate how  $F_1$ DZs tend to form where the habitats of the two parents grade into one another, creating a band of intermediate habitat in between. This habitat gradient may be altitude (*R. × sochadzeae*, *Phyllodoce*), pH (*R. × intermedium*), soil drainage and/or stability (*Encelia*, *Salvia × sylvestris*), or aspect (*Viola*). In other cases it is less clear, or in one case apparently transgressive (i.e., beyond the ecological tolerance of either parent, i.e., *Populus × jrtyschensis*; Jiang *et al.* 2016).

$F_1$ DZs may have evolutionary significance as barriers to gene flow, if  $F_1$  superiority prevents the recruitment of backcrosses (Milne *et al.* 2003), but clearly this effect won't be total unless all hybrids are  $F_1$ s. In many cases, a minority of backcrosses are present (Table 2), and Criste *et al.* (2016) have detected evidence of ancient introgression in *Populus × canescens*. Furthermore, in some cases there may be a strong barrier to backcrossing in one direction, but a much weaker one in the other, e.g., *Rhododendron × intermedium* (Milne and Abbott 2008). Hence  $F_1$ DZs might more accurately be said to restrict or minimize gene flow between species, relative to other forms of hybrid zone.

### Why are $F_1$ DZs so common in *Rhododendron*?

Among the  $F_1$ DZ examples above, three of the four most complete examples come from *Rhododendron*, plus one of the other six (Table 2). Detected  $F_1$ DZs are thus far more common in *Rhododendron* than in any other genus, with *Populus* coming a distant second. *Rhododendron* has also provided the only case I know of where  $F_2$  (or other intermediate post- $F_1$ ) class hybrids outnumber backcrosses, in this case in a small

hybrid population between *R. cyanocarpum* and *R. delavayi* (Ma *et al.* 2010). What then makes *Rhododendron* so uniquely suited to producing these phenomena?

For an F<sub>1</sub>DZ to form, the parents need to be highly interfertile, and there should be clear-cut ecological separation between them, leading to similar separation between F<sub>1</sub>s, parents and other hybrid classes. This is true of *Rhododendron* but also countless other species pairs, so this can only be part of the explanation.

F<sub>1</sub>DZ formation also requires that the effects of natural selection must be absolute: F<sub>1</sub>s reach adulthood, and that other potential subsequent generations must fail to. Moreover, this has to happen despite F<sub>1</sub> seed presumably being produced far more rarely than both parental seed and, once a fertile F<sub>1</sub> is formed, post-F<sub>1</sub> seed. That no class other than F<sub>1</sub>s reaches adulthood requires both (1) extreme selection, and (2) enough F<sub>1</sub> seed to populate the site. Regarding selection, F<sub>1</sub>s should possess one complete set of genes from each parent, allowing them to thrive in environments that combine the conditions each parent is adapted to (Milne *et al.* 2003, 2004; Jiang *et al.* 2016). Conversely, segregation after the F<sub>1</sub> generation creates novel gene complexes and hence non-intermediate ecological needs in each post-F<sub>1</sub> individual (Anderson 1948, 1949), meaning that certain post-F<sub>1</sub>s will outperform F<sub>1</sub>s in habitats that impose novel, as opposed to intermediate conditions, e.g., habitat disturbance in *Encelia* (Kyhos *et al.* 1981). The same process is likely to break up co-adapted gene complexes that confer adaptation to stresses imposed by the habitat of each parent, however, reducing the ability of the F<sub>2</sub> to tolerate conditions in habitats intermediate between those of the parents (Milne *et al.* 2003, 2004; Jiang *et al.* 2016). This provides a mechanism for selection to strongly favor F<sub>1</sub>s over post-F<sub>1</sub>s in undisturbed, transitional habitats, but not atypical or disturbed environments. In theory, the break-up of gene complexes could also lead to lower fitness in post-F<sub>1</sub>s than F<sub>1</sub>s, the so-called “hybrid breakdown.” This is likely to explain why F<sub>1</sub>s seem to outperform other classes in *Typha × glauca* (Freeland *et al.* 2013), and possibly *Populus × canescens* (Criste *et al.* 2016). Segregation is likely to increase the variance of intrinsic fitness (Rieseberg and Carney 1998), however, meaning that if large numbers of F<sub>2</sub> seed are produced, a minority might be fitter than F<sub>1</sub>s. This high variance might overcome hybrid breakdown in hybrid swarms, but would need to be weaker in effect if certain F<sub>1</sub>DZs are maintained by intrinsic selection, as postulated above.

If selection for F<sub>1</sub>s over other classes is strong enough, then an F<sub>1</sub>DZ can form provided enough F<sub>1</sub> seed is available. Indeed, the actual proportion of F<sub>1</sub>s among seed that reaches the site should not matter, only that enough of it reaches the site to populate it. In some cases, F<sub>1</sub> might be the only seed that is even capable of forming adult plants on sites where F<sub>1</sub>DZs form. Given that the total amount of F<sub>1</sub> seed produced by the parents is a product of the overall number of seeds produced by the

parents, and the proportion of that seed that is  $F_1$ , it follows that the likelihood of  $F_1$ DZ formation increases with the quantity of seed produced in the species involved. Cross (1975) estimated that a large, mature *Rhododendron ponticum* can produce around a million seeds per year. They start flowering after 12 years and live for >100 years (Cross 1975), so could have a lifetime output of millions of seeds. Only two of these seeds need to survive to maintain the population. If extreme selection for  $F_1$  seed occurs at seed germination and the seedling stages, enough surviving  $F_1$  seed could then dominate suitable habitats. Hence the production of extremely high numbers of seeds, permitting selection to act with high intensity upon them, might be a vital component for  $F_1$ DZ formation, and a significant part of why it happens more in *Rhododendron* than in any other genus. Among other cases of  $F_1$ DZs, *Populus* can also produce seeds in comparable numbers to *Rhododendron*, but less so for *Encelia* and *Phyllodoce*, and especially *Viola*. Possibly clonal spread and long lifespans may play a role in these latter cases.

### Hiding in plain sight: $F_1$ DZs masquerade as species.

$F_1$ DZs have only been understood fairly recently, compared for example to Anderson's (1948, 1949) detailed descriptions of hybrid swarms and the effects of segregation, and other models that describe hybrid zones (e.g., Moore 1977, Barton and Hewitt 1985, Harrison and Rand 1989). This may be in part because  $F_1$ DZs do not look like other hybrid zones: a population of segregating diverse hybrids is unmistakable because of its morphological diversity, but paradoxically  $F_1$  hybrids may all look similar. Thus, when a biologist sees a large number of morphologically similar  $F_1$  individuals together, with few or no intermediates to other taxa nearby, the initial conclusion will be that they are a species. Of the ten cases listed in Table 2, *Salvia × sylvestris* and *Rhododendron × intermedium* were both taken for stabilized hybrid species by Kerner (1895), whereas *R. × sochadzeae*, *R. × agustum*, *Encelia × laciniata* and *Phyllodoce caerulea × aleutica* were all initially described as species or non-hybrid taxa.

Based on this,  $F_1$ DZs probably exist that have not yet been diagnosed, and some may even have been described as species. Any supposed "species" that is brought into cultivation can be identified as an  $F_1$  as it won't breed true, so this can identify some uncertain *Rhododendron* "species" as being possible  $F_1$ DZs. Because so many examples of  $F_1$ DZs come from the genus *Rhododendron*, however, we should nonetheless expect that more  $F_1$ DZs may exist in this genus, waiting to be detected.

### British *Rhododendron ponticum*: Is it a hybrid swarm?

Considerable confusion has arisen recently concerning the exact nature of naturalized British populations of *R. ponticum*. Without doubt, some of the British material is introgressed with genetic material of *R. catawbiense*, *R. maximum* and very probably

*R. arboreum*, though not *R. macrophyllum* (Milne and Abbott 2000), and some other species might be involved on a highly local basis (Cullen 2011). Cullen's (2011) reference to this material as a hybrid swarm has led, however, to considerable confusion, and his attempt to reclassify all British material as *R. × superponticum* is unsupportable. It is necessary, therefore, to clear up some confusion here.

Both Cullen's (2011) meticulous morphological investigations, and my own (Milne and Abbott 2000), indicate that some, but not all, British *R. ponticum* plants show evidence of introgression. The vigor of British material is very probably not, however, due to introgression (Erfmeier *et al.* 2011). Hence, there is no morphological trait upon which British material can be consistently distinguished from *R. ponticum* elsewhere, and some of it is almost certainly genetically indistinguishable from the native Iberian material.

*R. ponticum* entered the British countryside through numerous deliberate plantings in the 19<sup>th</sup> Century, plus countless localized escapes from gardens and estates ever since (Milne 2017). Each planted population has its own unique history in cultivation, and in each case that history might involve hybridization with one other species (most commonly *R. catawbiense*), or many species, or none at all. Furthermore, ancestry will vary even within a population, especially where crossing has occurred with less commonly grown species in local plantings. Given this highly complex situation, applying a single hybrid name is completely untenable, either to all British material, or even to the minority that shows evidence of introgression. In short, the name *R. × superponticum* should be avoided entirely.

Cullen's (2011) described British material of *R. ponticum* as a "hybrid swarm." Whether or not this was technically correct is debatable, and it is likely at best a gross oversimplification. Though Cullen's (2011) paper of course gives far more detail, problems are being created by others when they repeat the "hybrid swarm" description, causing multiple misconceptions by anyone not familiar with the detailed history of this plant in Britain. The term "hybrid swarm" here is misleading for the following reasons. First, variation in British plants is due to varying levels of introgression from different species, whereas applying the term hybrid swarm implies that it is due to segregation. Second, the term wrongly implies that hybridization is ongoing, when most or all hybridization happened in cultivation before the plants escaped. Third, it implies that all material is hybrid when this is almost certainly untrue. Fourth, it implies that all British plants form one interconnected entity. Hybrid swarms can sometimes involve more than two species, but in British *R. ponticum* not all individuals have the same ancestry, as each population derives from a local planting, and there may be over a dozen hybrid combinations present. Finally, "hybrid swarm" greatly overstates the influence of hybridization, implying that British material might typically only be

around 50% *R. ponticum*, when in fact it is probably 90 to 95% *R. ponticum* (Milne and Abbott 2000).

Overall therefore, British material represents an exceptionally complex situation, with varying levels of influence from an unknown number of other species. Any attempt to subdivide this material taxonomically is doomed to failure, and better understanding will be therefore achieved if the term “hybrid swarm” is avoided. Instead, it should simply be referred to as genetically altered *R. ponticum*.

## Conclusion

*Rhododendron* hybrid zones offer fertile grounds for scientific research because they often display very unusual characteristics, such as the relative frequency of  $F_1$ -dominated hybrid zones, but also one curious case where  $F_2$ s seem to be the most common class. To study this further requires understanding of hybrid fitness, but the long lifespan of rhododendrons makes it difficult to study hybrid fitness empirically, by making transplant and common garden experiments to test hybrid fitness difficult to achieve.

Formation of  $F_1$ DZs always requires habitat-mediated superiority of  $F_1$ s over parents, as the precise habitat zonation of  $F_1$ s in all cases in Table 2 cannot be explained in any other way. They also require that adequate quantities of  $F_1$  seed are produced, which in turn requires two things to be high: seed set and rate of hybridization. That it satisfies these requirements so well might be what makes  $F_1$ DZ formation more common in *Rhododendron* than elsewhere. There is less certainty over why there is  $F_1$  superiority over post- $F_1$ s. In *Rhododendron* and *Encelia*, this seems to be habitat mediated, whereas in *Populus × canescens* and possibly *Phyllodoce*, it is probably not related to habitat. The situation with other species needs more data to resolve. Of course, both explanations might apply in some cases, and the question might be better put as whether the habitat dependent or independent component of  $F_1$  advantage has the greater effect.

Although only briefly touched on here, the potential role of hybridisation and hybrid speciation in the evolution and diversification of the genus could be significant, and ironically one of the biggest obstacles to unpicking these effects may be the occurrence of regular introgression between extant species, making the signature of ancient hybridization events difficult to detect. With all these unique aspects, *Rhododendron* is thus an excellent model for examining the consequences of natural hybridization

## References

- Abbott, R.J. 1992. Plant invasions, interspecific hybridization and the evolution of plant taxa. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution* 7: 401–405.

- Anderson, E. 1948. Hybridization of the habitat. *Evolution* 2: 1–9.
- Anderson, E. 1949. *Introgressive hybridization*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Arnold, M.L. 1997. *Natural Hybridization and Evolution*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Arnold, M.L. 2000. Anderson's paradigm: Louisiana Irises and the study of evolutionary phenomena. *Molecular Ecology* 9: 1687–1698.
- Barton, N.H., and G.M. Hewitt. 1985. Analysis of hybrid zones. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics* 16: 113–148.
- Bleeker, W., and H. Hurka. 2001. Introgressive hybridization in *Rorippa* (Brassicaceae): gene flow and its consequences in natural and anthropogenic habitats. *Molecular Ecology* 10: 2013–2022.
- Bruni, I., F. De Mattia, S. Fluch, C. Ferrari, M. Corazza, E. Dinelli, and M. Labra. 2016. Genetic introgression of hybrid *Rhododendron × intermedium* Tausch is habitat mediated: Evidences from south-eastern Alps (Italy). *Plant Biosystems - An International Journal Dealing with all Aspects of Plant Biology* 150: 3 449–458.
- Christe, C., K.N. Störling, L. Bresadola, B. Fussi, B. Heinze, D. Wegmann, and C. Lezer. 2016. Selection against recombinant hybrids maintains reproductive isolation in hybridizing *Populus* species despite  $F_1$  fertility and recurrent gene flow. *Molecular Ecology* 25: 2482–2498.
- Cross, J.R. 1975. Biological flora of the British Isles: *Rhododendron ponticum* L. *Journal of Ecology* 63: 345–364.
- Cullen, J. 2011. Naturalized Rhododendrons Widespread in Great Britain and Ireland, *Hanburyana* 5: 11–19.
- Danet, F. 2012. On Some Poorly Known Hybrids of *Rhododendron herzogii* (Ericaceae) in New Guinea. *The Rhododendron, Official Journal of the Australian Rhododendron Society* 51:11–21.
- Eeckhaut, T., E. Calsyn, and J. Van Huylenbroeck. 2013. Intersubgeneric hybridization of belgian pot azaleas (*Rhododendron simsii*) with tropical Vireya genotypes. *Acta Horticultura* 990: 259–263.
- Ellstrand, N.C., R. Whitkus, and L.H. Rieseberg. 1996. Distribution of spontaneous plant hybrids. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 93: 5090–5093.
- Erfmeier, A., M. Tsaliki, C.A. Roß, and H. Bruelheide. 2011. Genetic and phenotypic differentiation between invasive and native *Rhododendron* (Ericaceae) taxa and the role of hybridization. *Ecology and Evolution* 1: 392–407.
- Freeland, J., C. Ciotir, and H. Kirk. 2013. Regional differences in the abundance of native, introduced, and hybrid *Typha* spp. in northeastern North America influence wetland invasions *Biological Invasions* 15: 2651–2665.
- Goetsch, L., A.J. Eckert, and B.D. Hall. 2005. The molecular systematics of *Rhododendron* (Ericaceae): a phylogeny based upon RPB2 gene sequences.

- Goetsch, L., L.A. Craven, and B.D. Hall. 2011. Major speciation accompanied the dispersal of Vireya rhododendrons (Ericaceae, *Rhododendron* sect. *Schistanthe*) through the Malayan archipelago: evidence from nuclear gene sequences. *Taxon* 60: 1015–1028.
- Grabenstein, K.C., and S.A. Taylor. 2018. Breaking Barriers: Causes, Consequences, and Experimental Utility of Human-Mediated Hybridization. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, 33: 198-212.
- Gramlich, S., and E. Hörandl. 2016. Fitness of natural willow hybrids in a pioneer mosaic hybrid zone. *Ecology and Evolution* 6: 7645–7655.
- Guo, Q. 2014. Plant hybridization: the role of human disturbance and biological invasion. *Diversity and Distributions* 20: 1345–1354.
- Harrison, R.G., and D.M. Rand. 1989. Mosaic hybrid zone and the nature of species boundaries. In: *Speciation and its Consequences* (eds Otte D, Endler JA), pp. 111–133. Sinauer & Associates, Sunderland, Massachusetts.
- Jiang, D., J. Feng, M. Dong, G. Wu, K. Mao, and J. Liu. 2016. Genetic origin and composition of a natural hybrid poplar *Populus × jrtyschensis* from two distantly related species. *BMC Plant Biology* 16: 89.
- Kameyama, Y., and G. Kudo. 2011. Clarification of the genetic component of hybrids between Phylodoce caerulea and Phylodoce aleutica (Ericaceae) in Hokkaido, northern Japan. *Plant Species Biology* 26: 93–98.
- Kerner, A. 1895. *The Natural History of Plants*, II, 588. The Gresham Publishing Co., London, UK.
- King, B.L. 2000. Natural Hybridization between *Rhododendron periclymenoides* and *R. atlanticum* Relative to Herbivory by *Pyrrhalta rufosanguinea*. *Castanea* 65: 179–192.
- Kita, K., Y. Kurashige, T. Yukawa, S. Nishimura, and T. Handa. 2005. Intergeneric hybridization between *Menziesia* and *Rhododendron* based on molecular phylogenetic data. *Journal of the Japanese Society of Horticultural Science* 74: 318–323.
- Kobayashi, N., T. Handa, I. Miyajima, K. Arisumi, and K. Takayanagi. 2007. Introgressive Hybridization between *Rhododendron kiusianum* and *R. kaempferi* (Ericaceae) in Kyushu, Japan Based on Chloroplast DNA Markers. *Edinburgh Journal of Botany* 64: 283–293.
- Kobayashi, N., T. Handa, K. Yoshimura, Y. Tsumura, K. Arisumi, and K. Takayanagi. 2000. Evidence for introgressive hybridization based on chloroplast DNA polymorphisms and morphological variation in wild evergreen azalea populations in the Kirishima Mountains, Japan. *Edinburgh Journal of Botany* 57: 209–219.
- Kron, K.A., L.M. Gawen, and M.W. Chase. 1993. Evidence for introgression in

- azaleas (*Rhododendron*, Ericaceae): chloroplast DNA and morphological variation in a hybrid swarm on Stone Mountain, Georgia. *American Journal of Botany* 80: 1095–1099.
- Kyhos, D.W., C. Clark, and W.C. Thompson. 1981. The hybrid nature of *Encelia laciniata* (Compositae: Heliantheae) and control of population composition by post-dispersal selection. *Systematic Botany* 6: 399–411.
- Lamont, B.B., T. He, N.J. Enright, S.L. Krauss, and B.P. Miller. 2003. Anthropogenic disturbance promotes hybridization between *Banksia* species by altering their biology. *Journal of Evolutionary Biology* 16: 551–557.
- Ma, Y.-P., R.I. Milne, C.Q. Zhang, and J Yang. 2010. Unusual patterns of hybridization involving a narrow endemic *Rhododendron* species (Ericaceae) in Yunnan, China. *American Journal of Botany*, 97: 1749–1757.
- Ma, Y.-P., W.-J. Xie, X. Tian, W.-B. Sun, Z. Wu, and R.I. Milne. 2014. Unidirectional hybridization and reproductive barriers between two heterostylous primrose species in north-west Yunnan, China. *Annals of Botany* 113: 753–761.
- Ma, Y.-P., W.-J. Xie, W.-B. Sun, and T. Marczewski. 2016. Strong reproductive isolation despite occasional hybridization between a widely distributed and a narrow endemic *Rhododendron* species. *Scientific Reports* 6: 19146.
- Marczewski, T., D.F. Chamberlain DF, and R.I. Milne. 2015. Hybridization in closely related *Rhododendron* species: half of all species-differentiating markers experience serious transmission ratio distortion. *Ecology and Evolution* 5: 3003–3022.
- Marczewski, T., Y.-P. Ma, X.-M. Zhang, W.-B. Sun W-B, and A.J. Marczewski. 2016. Why is population information crucial for taxonomy? A case study involving a hybrid swarm and related varieties. *AoB Plants* 8: plw070.
- Milne, R.I. 2004. Phylogeny and biogeography of *Rhododendron* subsection *Pontica*, a group with a Tertiary relict distribution. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 33: 389–401.
- Milne, R.I. 2017. *Rhododendron*, Reaktion Books, London.
- Milne, R.I., and R.J. Abbott. 2000. Origin and evolution of invasive naturalized material of *Rhododendron ponticum* L. in the British Isles. *Molecular Ecology* 5: 541–556.
- Milne, R.I., and R.J. Abbott. 2008. Reproductive isolation among two interfertile *Rhododendron* species: low frequency of post- $F_1$  hybrid genotypes in alpine hybrid zones. *Molecular Ecology*, 17: 1108–1121.
- Milne, R.I., R.J. Abbott, K.W. Wolff, and D.F. Chamberlain. 1999. Hybridization among sympatric species of *Rhododendron*: (Ericaceae) in Turkey: morphological and molecular evidence. *American Journal of Botany* 86: 1776–1785.
- Milne, R.I., C. Davies, R. Prickett, L.H. Inns, and D.F. Chamberlain. 2010. Phylogeny of *Rhododendron* subgenus *Hymenanthes* based on Chloroplast DNA markers:

- between-lineage hybridization during adaptive radiation? *Plant Systematics and Evolution* 285: 233-244.
- Milne, R.I., S. Terzioglu, and R.J. Abbott. 2003. A hybrid zone dominated by fertile F<sub>1</sub>s: maintenance of species barriers in *Rhododendron*. *Molecular Ecology* 12: 2719-2729.
- Milne, R.I., S. Terzioglu, and R.J. Abbott. 2004. Origin and maintenance of *Rhododendron × sochadzeae*, a fertile F<sub>1</sub> hybrid that occupies an ecotone between *R. ponticum* and *R. caucasicum* in Turkey. *Turkish Journal of Botany* 28: 93-100.
- Moore, W.S. 1977. An evaluation of narrow hybrid zones in vertebrates. *Quarterly Review of Biology* 52: 263-277.
- Nagano, Y., A.S. Hirao, and T. Itino. 2015. Genetic structure of a hybrid zone between two violets, *Viola rossii* Hemsl. and *V. bissetii* Maxim.: dominance of F<sub>1</sub> individuals in a narrow contact range. *Plant Species Biology* 30: 237-243.
- Ortego, J., P.F. Gugger, and V.L. Sork. 2017. Impacts of human induced environmental disturbances on hybridization between two ecologically differentiated Californian oak species. *New Phytologist* 213: 942-955.
- Pieper, S.J., J.R. Freeland, and M.E. Dorken. 2018. Coexistence of *Typha latifolia*, *T. angustifolia* (Typhaceae) and their invasive hybrid is not explained by niche partitioning across water depths. *Aquatic Botany* 144: 46-53.
- Rieseberg, L.H., and S.E. Carney. 1998. Plant hybridization. *New Phytologist* 140: 599-624.
- Semple, J.C., and K.S. Semple. 1977. *Borreria × cubana* (*B. frutescens* × *B. arborescens*): interspecific hybridization in the Florida Keys. *Systematic Botany* 2: 292-302.
- Tagane, S., M. Hiramatsu, and H. Okubo. 2008. Hybridization and asymmetric introgression between *Rhododendron eriocarpum* and *R. indicum* on Yakushima Island, southwest Japan. *Journal of Plant Resources* 121: 387-395.
- Twyford, A.D., C.A. Kidner CA, and R.A. Ennos. 2015. Maintenance of species boundaries in a Neotropical radiation of *Begonia*. *Molecular Ecology* 24: 4982-4993.
- van Ree, H. 2015. *Hirsutum.info: About Rhododendrons, Azaleas and Vireyas; a virtual arboretum.* [www.hirsutum.info](http://www.hirsutum.info).
- Whitney, K.D., J.R. Ahern, L.G. Campbell, L.P. Albert, and M.S. King. 2010. Patterns of hybridization in plants. *Perspectives in Plant Ecology, Evolution and Systematics* 12: 175-182.
- Williams, E.G., and Rouse, J.L. 1988. Disparate style lengths contribute to isolation of species in *Rhododendron*. *Australian Journal of Botany* 36: 183-191.
- Wu, C.-I. 2001. The genic view of the process of speciation. *Journal of Evolutionary Biology* 14: 851-865.
- Yan, L.-Y., K.S. Burgess, R.I. Milne, C.-N. Fu, D.-Z. Li, and L.-M. Gao. 2017.

- Asymmetric natural hybridization varies among hybrid swarms between two diploid *Rhododendron* species. *Annals of Botany* 120: 51-61.
- Yokoyama, N., H. Hayakawa, K. Matsuyama, M. Muroi, K. Ohga, K. Ito, R. Arakawa, and T. Fukuda. 2012. Morphological and molecular analyses of rheophytic *Rhododendron ripense* and its allied dryland species *R. macrosepalum* (Ericaceae). *Environmental Control in Biology* 50: 305-312.
- Zapfe, L., and J.R. Freeland. 2015. Heterosis in invasive F<sub>1</sub> cattail hybrids (*Typha × glauca*). *Aquatic Botany* 125: 44-47.
- Zeng, Y.-F., J.-G. Zhang, A.-G. Duan, and B. Abduhamiti. 2016. Genetic structure of *Populus* hybrid zone along the Irtysh River provides insight into plastid-nuclear incompatibility. *Scientific Reports* 6: 28043.
- Zha, H.-G., R.I. Milne, and H. Sun. 2010. Asymmetric hybridization in *Rhododendron agastum*: a hybrid taxon comprising mainly F<sub>1</sub>s in Yunnan, China. *Annals of Botany* 105: 89-100.

## **Section: Horticulture**

### **Chapter 8**

---

# **Where Senses and Science Converge**

**Stephen Krebs**

**David G. Leach Research Station,  
The Holden Arboretum  
Kirtland, OH, USA  
[skrebs@holdenfg.org](mailto:skrebs@holdenfg.org)**



### **Introduction**

As the minority horticultural viewpoint in this issue, I am using my page allotment to discuss common interests shared by gardeners and researchers and how garden clubs like the American Rhododendron Society (ARS) and the Azalea Society of America (ASA) have facilitated scientific inquiry. The key connection here is that plant societies consist of plant enthusiasts who are curious to know more about the beautiful plants that they enjoy at home, who have the desire to study species, to explore plants in the wild, to test clones in different environments, to establish collections, and to improve the cultural techniques for growing rhododendrons and azaleas. At the same time, a scholarly interest among some members has resulted in ARS/ASA journal articles, bibliographic services, databases, and archives that are available in print, CDs, or online. These endeavors have great value for science, but most plant scientists don't interact with or appreciate the wealth of knowledge that garden clubs have to offer research. Many of these activities are described in more detail on the ARS website, [www.rhododendron.org](http://www.rhododendron.org); the ASA website, [www.azaleas.org](http://www.azaleas.org); and the first two issues of this journal (*Rhododendrons International*) which describe the worldwide interest in *Rhododendron* among gardeners, [www.rhododendron.org/ri-index.htm](http://www.rhododendron.org/ri-index.htm). Some examples of how ARS/ASA endeavors facilitate scientific inquiry are given below.

#### ***Rhododendron* collections with horticultural roots**

**1) *Rhododendron Species Botanical Garden, Federal Way, WA, USA:*** Growing public interest in rhododendrons led the ARS to form the Species Project in 1962, chaired by Dr. Milton Walker, who was instrumental in arranging a shipment of

rhododendron and azalea species cuttings from the U.K. to Canada for propagation and eventual distribution to the U.S., where they were initially grown on Dr. Walker's estate. Subsequent need for more space and financial support resulted in the establishment of the Rhododendron Species Foundation (now Rhododendron Species Botanical Garden), created by the ARS board as an independent non-profit membership organization dedicated to the conservation, public display, and distribution of Rhododendron species (Hootman 2016). Home to one of the largest collections of species *Rhododendrons* in the world, the garden displays over 700 of the more than 1000 species found in the wilds of North America, Europe, and Asia ([rhodygarden.org/cms/](http://rhodygarden.org/cms/)). [Editor's note: In this issue, Medeiros *et al.* provide an overview of some research taking place at this garden.]

**2) Rhododendron-Park, Bremen, Germany:** This collection was founded in 1936 by German Rhododendron Society in partnership with the city of Bremen municipal parks department and local *Rhododendron* industry (Schepker 2016). The park has expanded from its original two to 46 ha (five to 114 acres) that showcase one of the largest *Rhododendron* collections in the world with over 550 species and 2500 cultivars ([rhododendronpark-bremen.de/](http://rhododendronpark-bremen.de/)). The society remains actively involved with the Rhododendron Park and supports regional research on *Rhododendron* taxonomy, plant breeding, culture, databases, and species exploration. [Editor's note: In this issue, Khunert *et al.* provide an overview of some research taking place at this garden.]

Many other *Rhododendron* collections worldwide are maintained at public arboreta or botanical gardens, and some of these are supported by manual labor, expertise, and financial help from local rhododendron and azalea clubs. The importance of these collections cannot be understated. They are essential for *ex situ* species conservation and for easy access to and exchange of plants that naturally occur in remote locations. The taxa are usually arranged and displayed in a manner that enhances public enjoyment and education. Collections of species and cultivars also provide the raw material for plant breeding, which is focused on recombining traits in novel hybrids. And because collections in different locations often overlap, containing genetically related and sometimes identical (clonal) accessions, they can be used to study the interactions of genes and environments, such as the effects of climate on plant phenology or identifying adaptive limitations among taxa.

## Research funding

**1) Rhododendron Research Foundation:** The RRF was formed in 1976 as a trust agreement between a group of trustees and the ARS. It is operationally and financially independent of ARS, soliciting and investing donations for its continued support of research. Rhododendron and azalea research proposals that are theoretical or applied

can be funded for up to \$5000, a level that is useful for doing exploratory research or pursuing questions unique to the genus that might not be funded by larger institutional grants. The grant guidelines list research topics that are currently priorities for the ARS, and the list is updated periodically ([www.rhododendron.org/researchgrants.htm](http://www.rhododendron.org/researchgrants.htm)). To date, over 144 projects have been funded, with examples of scope given below:

### Research Foundation Funding as of 2008

Research Category	No. Proposals Funded
Botanical research	17
Propagation and culture	14
Control of diseases and pests	27
Physiology/Stress tolerance	21
Genetics & cytology	19
Collections and conservation	10
Plant culture	16
Plant breeding research	7
Research archives and database	4
Other	7

<http://scholar.lib.vt.edu/ejournals/JARS/v62n1/v62n1-bernady.htm>

**2) Azalea Research Fund:** This fund was started in 2009 by the ASA at the suggestion of Dr. August Kehr, a former United States Department of Agriculture scientist and ornamental plant enthusiast. Its mission is to support research that will “foster increased knowledge and improvement of the standards of excellence with regards to azaleas.” The level of funding and scope of research priorities are similar to those of the RSF—[www.azaleas.org/research/arf-research/](http://www.azaleas.org/research/arf-research/).

### Seed exchanges

Both ARS and ASA have rhododendron and azaleas seed exchanges that are supplied and used by members (who get first pick), as well as non-members. Other international rhododendron societies provide a similar service for their members. For decades, this has been one of the most popular and efficient means of making the global diversity of *Rhododendron* available to all. Some of the seed is wild-collected (species), some from open-pollinated clones in member gardens, while most is seed from hybridizers who are making controlled crosses between different species or cultivars to recombine traits. In addition to the personal enjoyment of growing plants from seed to flower, participants are guaranteed genetically unique plants that may have novel features. Contributors are

encouraged to provide accurate and detailed information about the seed source. The cost is nominal, about \$2 (US) for 50 seeds plus shipping. The links are:  
[www.rhododendron.org/seedexchange.htm](http://www.rhododendron.org/seedexchange.htm) (ARS) and  
[www.azaleas.org/2018-azalea-seed-list/](http://www.azaleas.org/2018-azalea-seed-list/) (ASA).

## Reference materials

**1) Digital journal archives:** The *Quarterly Bulletin of The American Rhododendron Society* was first published in 1947 and evolved into the *Journal American Rhododendron Society* (JARS) in 1982. *The Azalean*, a quarterly published by the ASA, was first issued in 1979. Both journals include contributions from and provide a wealth of information for enthusiasts, educators, and researchers. The research articles that appear from time to time are peer-reviewed but the journals are not included in scientific citation references such as ISI. Nonetheless, there are some very good data that appear in these issues. For example, one can currently find more information about *Rhododendron* pH tolerance in JARS than currently exists among mainstream plant journals. The ARS Digital Publications Committee, spearheaded by members Herb Spady and Bob Weissman, has produced electronic issues of JARS from 1947 to 2008 that are freely available on the ARS website. While the digitizing process is still underway, the objective is to have all issues but for the latest ongoing five years (most recent 20 issues) in the database. The latter are not included, as their access is restricted, and is one of the benefits of having ARS membership. The digitized journal is archived at the Digital Library and Archive at Virginia Tech University and can be Google searched by keyword(s)—<http://scholar.lib.vt.edu/ejournals/JARS/>. It should be noted that a very few article authors have specifically requested that their articles not be made available in the Digital Library and Archive at Virginia Tech University, as they would like the opportunity to make that information available in books they may publish, so the digital JARS archive is not totally complete. Nevertheless, this is a tremendous asset for accessing over 60 years of wide-ranging articles on rhododendrons and azaleas. Starting in 2012, JARS also became available in both paper and digital formats, and the digital format can be accessed by ARS members with their passwords at <https://www.arsoffice.org/protect1/users/online.asp>. It should be noted that formats, and hence article page numbers, differ between the print and digital formats.

Back issues of *The Azalean* are also available and searchable online at the ASA website, although a member password is needed to access the most recent 12 issues.

**2) Rhododendron hybrids – a guide to their origins:** This useful book was first published in 1986 by nurseryman Harold Greer and university professor Homer Salley, both members of the ARS. The project received multiple funding cycles from the Rhododendron Research Foundation, expanding to two volumes and a companion CD.

The volumes trace the ancestry of thousands of hybrid rhododendrons through one or more generations to the original species from which they derived. This is made possible due to the early-19th century practice of pedigree breeding in rhododendrons, where selected individuals from each generation are mated to produce the next. Compared to most ornamental plants, rhododendron cultivars are genetically complex because they often result from interspecific hybridization between several different species over multiple generations. Sally and Greer's (1986) book is used by many hybridizers who want to know more about the genetic backgrounds of plants that they are considering as parents for breeding. The pedigrees also have a number of scientific applications. They can be used to calculate consanguinity (relatedness) and the effects of inbreeding on plant traits. Genealogies can also be used to study trait inheritance in family lineages, as is frequently done in human genetics. However, most plant geneticists prefer to make their own structured populations via selfing, sibling, or parent-offspring matings (e.g., F<sub>2</sub> or backcross generations), which result in large segregating populations that cannot be achieved in human research due to practical and ethical concerns.

**3) ARS website 'Plant Data.'** This website tab can also be used to query pedigree information on specific cultivars, or on groups of plants sharing common traits or origin (hybridizer) using a search engine. This can be used to conduct armchair investigations, such as asking the question "is yellow flower color in rhododendrons maternally inherited?" This is an oft-debated issue among hybridizers. Going to the "Plant Data" tab on the ARS home page, selecting "Rhododendrons," and typing "yellow" in the flower color field produces a list of hybrids that meet that description. By clicking on the "more info" link, one can ascertain the parentage for each cultivar (the answer is that the yellow flower trait in progeny can derive from either the pollen or seed parent, so it is likely to be an autosomal trait). While the Rhododendron Hybrids CD provides more in depth information, it appears to be more limited in search capabilities

**4) Rhododendron and Azalea Research:** This is a hardcopy database of 1000 citations with brief abstracts (Salley 1992). The project was funded by the Rhododendron Research Foundation. A second volume was later produced (Salley 1994) which added 800 more citations of scientific writing on genus *Rhododendron* through 1993. Collectively, articles from 544 authors appearing in 461 journals are organized into broad topic areas and are searchable by author and/or subject indices. A list of journals cited is also included in each volume. Dr. Salley's work complements a bibliography published by Hannover University, Germany (Spethmann et al. 1992, 1996, 2002).

**5) The International Rhododendron Register and Checklist, second edition, 2004:** This two-volume set, now with seven supplements, was compiled by Alan Leslie, the recently retired International Rhododendron Registrar, and published by the Royal Horticultural Society. It contains the most up-to-date listing of all rhododendron

hybrids, with over 28,000 entries of both registered and unregistered names for cultivars and Group epithets (including their synonyms), as well as the names of nearly 2000 individuals or firms that have played a role in the raising, naming, introduction or registration of these plants. The second edition covers all azaleas, azaleodendrons, vireyas and “hardy” rhododendrons. It uses the botanical nomenclature and classification followed in reporting on parentage and origin of the cultivars and Groups based on the revision of the genus *Rhododendron* pioneered by David Chamberlain and James Cullen, published in 1996. The one exception is with *R. yukushimanum*, which was retained even though it has been revised to be a subspecies of *R. degronianum*. The hard copy of this set is difficult to obtain, but it and its supplements have just recently been released in digital form (International Rhododendron Register Second Edition Single Volume Edition FOR WEBSITE.pdf, 119 mb) by Pam Hayward, Rhododendrons, Camellias and Magnolias Group, RHS, which has made it much easier to both obtain and search for entries. It really is an essential document for anyone interested in searching out what *Rhododendron* cultivar names have been adopted, and what are the parents and characteristic features of each accepted specific cultivar and Group name.

## Species in the wild

Rhododendron enthusiasts who grow species and hybrids in their gardens appreciate what nature has to offer and are supportive of their conservation efforts both *in situ* (in the wild) and *ex situ* (in culture). In North America, efforts in the field occur mainly on the east and west coasts where most of the native rhododendron and azalea species grow. Fortunately, in the USA, many of the ranges of these Rhododendron are distributed on federal or state protected lands. Some state-listed, rare species in the American Midwest have received special protection, such as the Rhododendron Cove State Nature Preserve in Ohio, which contains disjunct populations of the rosebay rhododendron (*R. maximum*) and flame azalea (*R. calendulaceum*).

**Gregory Bald:** Many summits in the Smokey Mountains of North Carolina are forested, but others have open meadows called “balds.” Gregory Bald is noteworthy because it contains several native deciduous azalea species that bloom spectacularly in June, surrounded by broad mountain vistas at 1845 m (5000 ft) elevation. The high diversity of flower color and form is thought to result from natural hybridization between four azalea species that are sympatric at that location—*R. arborescens*, *R. calendulaceum*, *R. cumberlandense*, and *R. viscosum*. The origins of the balds (causes of deforestation) are obscure, but it is generally agreed that without current periodic clearing, the meadows would become overgrown in a short time. To prevent this from happening, a partnership was formed between the Mid Atlantic Chapter (MAC) of the ARS and the National Park Service in which ARS funding was used both to purchase a

mower and to hire an intern to reestablish the site to its “original” 33 open acres (13.5 ha). The effort was led by MAC members Don Hyatt, Jim Brandt, George McLellan, and Sandra McDonald, who have made the study and preservation of native azaleas in the wild a lifetime pursuit.

**Western North American Rhododendron Species Project (WNARSP) <http://www.wnarsp.org/index.html>:** The WNARSP initiative started among a group of *Rhododendron* species enthusiasts in Washington State, and has operated under the auspices of the Rhododendron Species Botanical Garden in Federal Way, WA. The goal was to compile location information about their native species populations from a variety of sources, including local naturalists, universities, and government agencies. This has resulted in species maps for the following taxa: *R. occidentale*, *R. albiflorum*, *R. camtschaticum*, *R. groenlandicum*, *R. macrophyllum*, *R. neoglandulosum*, and *R. tomentosum*, that collectively range from the Arctic Circle to southern California near the border with Mexico. The location data has been digitally archived and was used to generate interactive maps of known indigenous populations. According to their homepage, WNARSP “endeavors to spread the knowledge through their website, magazine and newsletter articles, and custom maps for researchers.” This fine scale information could prove useful for conservation efforts or studies of local adaptation in taxa that occur in a wide range of habitats. Further inquiries about this database can be made through the Rhododendron Species Botanical Garden, [wnarsp@rhodygarden.org](mailto:wnarsp@rhodygarden.org).

### **Future roles for plant societies**

The examples above illustrate how plant societies can lend their organizational weight to promote further interest in and knowledge about their beloved subjects. Equally evident is a long history of individual volunteers within the general membership who have taken on big projects and used their talents and time to produce substantive work. However, as with many other gardening societies, membership in ARS has decreased from its high point of 5600 (1994) to about 2400 members in 2018. While rhododendrons and azaleas remain commercially important landscape plants, many in future generations that might enjoy a few shrubs in their gardens may be less inclined to develop extensive and diverse home collections, and with so much information now on the web, furthering their plant knowledge in the company of like-minded club members may not be as attractive an option. To offset these trends, rhododendron societies world-wide could benefit from greater collaboration among them and the development of projects and programs that attract a global and perhaps more web-oriented audience.

In addition to shifting social preferences, the forces of global trade and climate change are presenting new challenges for the cultivation of all ornamental plants, but in particular for taxa such as *Rhododendron* that are not broadly adapted to a wide range

of growing conditions. The advent of higher temperatures combined with changes in precipitation (drought or flooding) will undoubtedly cause excessive stresses both in garden landscapes and in the wild. These abiotic stresses can also modulate biotic stresses as, for example, increases in temperature and rainfall increase the range and disease pressure exerted by plant pathogens. In addition, the rapid introduction of non-native pests and diseases via globalization constitutes a severe biodiversity threat to organisms that have not experienced them before. These problems are not unique to *Rhododendron*, but the high level of diversity within the genus offers the possibility that natural variation in adaptive traits might mitigate some of the effects of climate change and invasive species. From a horticultural perspective, it will be increasingly important to identify functional diversity in the wild for breeding new varieties that can better adapt to stressful environments and be successfully grown by consumers. Maintaining the public popularity and commercial viability of rhododendrons and azaleas is important to the future of plant associations like both the ARS and ASA, because having a beautiful and healthy plant at home is often the first step towards deeper knowledge and engagement.

## References

- Hootman, S. 2016. Rhododendron Species Foundation. *Rhododendrons International* 1(1); 29-40.
- Salley, H.E. and Greer, H.E. 1986. *Rhododendron hybrids: a guide to their origins*. Timber Press, Portland, OR.
- Salley, H. 1992. *Rhododendron and Azalea Research: a database of 1000 citations with brief abstracts*, Vol. 1.
- Salley, H. 1994. *Rhododendron and Azalea Research: a database of 1000 citations with brief abstracts*, Vol. 2.
- Schepker, H. 2016. German Rhododendron Society. *Rhododendrons International* 1(2); 41-47.
- Spethmann, W., M. Oetting and B. Walter. 1992. Rhododendron Bibliography. 1, Supplement 1996, 2. Supplement 2002. Deutsche RhododendronGesellschaft e.V. und Abteilung Baumschule, Leibnitz Universität Hannover.

## **Section: Ecology & Ethnobotany**

### **Chapter 9**

# **Monitoring Rhododendron Flowering Times in a Changing Climate**

**Robbie Hart<sup>1</sup> and Sailesh Ranjitkar<sup>2</sup>**

<sup>1</sup>**Missouri Botanical Garden**

**Post Office Box 299**

**St. Louis, Missouri, 63166, USA**

<sup>2</sup>**Kunming Institute of Botany**

**132 Lanhei Road**

**650201 Kunming, Yunnan, China**



R. Hart



S. Ranjitkar

### **Introduction**

Phenology—the seasonal timing of life history events—is a critical dimension of plant biology. It affects growth, reproductive fitness, natural hybridization patterns, the survival of individual plants and the persistence of entire populations. In rhododendrons, flowering phenology can be as dramatic a moment in natural settings as it is in gardens. The flowering of rhododendrons in the eastern Himalaya—where the genus' species are at their most diverse—was described by plant hunter Frank Kingdon-Ward in 1926 as “a tidal wave of tense colours which gleam and glow in leagues of breaking light” (Ward *et al.* 2008 [1926]).

These displays have also made *Rhododendron* flowering an important moment in the seasonal rounds of native Himalayan peoples. For example, the blooms of *Rhododendron* signal to high-elevation indigenous Himalayans that the time has come to begin agricultural activities. In the western Himalaya, local festivals such as flower day (*phool sankranti*) from mid-March until April celebrate this onset of spring; similar spring festivals are celebrated in the eastern Himalaya in various forms where *Rhododendron* blooms presage the arrival of spring (Ranjitkar *et al.* 2014a).

The flowering also represents an important source of food for pollinators, including insects and birds (Bawa and Kadur 2013; Huang *et al.* 2017). The wide extent of *Rhododendron* flowers across season and elevation provides a continuous food source

for these animals. Where one species is spread along an elevational gradient—such as *R. arboreum* in Nepal—pollinator populations may build up first at lower elevations and later be able to move to higher elevations as availability of pollen at the lower locations decreases (Ranjitkar *et al.* 2012). At higher elevation, species-rich sites, the staggered phenological progression of flowering across the season as one species gives way to the next establishes continued provisioning to pollinators and other floral visitors (Hart and Salick 2018).

Shifts in phenology are one of the most obvious ways in which plants respond to climate changes. Across the globe, both long-term and wide-scale records of plant reproductive phenology are being associated with climate change. These range from historical records of the seasonal timing of cherry-blossom flowering in Japan (Aono and Kazui 2008), to the wine-grape harvest in France (Cook and Wolkovich 2016), the records of amateur naturalists recording plant flowering times in England (Fitter 2002) and America (Miller-Rushing and Primack 2008) and contemporary scientific phenological observations by, for example, the USA National Phenology Network, the Chinese Phenological Observation Network (Ge *et al.* 2014) and the Pan European Phenology Project (Basler 2016).

When plant phenology functions as an indicator of other seasonal events, shifts in plant phenology can be culturally salient signs of broad scale responses to climate effects across the environment. For example, *rhododendron* blooming is very closely observed in Kathmandu and associated with a local festival called *lhuti punhi*. In recent years, both locals and pilgrims have reported that the *rhododendron* bloom has completed already by the dates when this festival is celebrated. Similar changes in seasonal indicators have been used to infer climate change at sites across the globe. These include observations by indigenous people (Lantz and Turner 2003, Nabhan 2010, Armatas *et al.* 2016), by citizen science networks (Lawrence 2009), and in historical contexts where instrumental observations of climate events are lacking (Chuine *et al.* 2004).

Of course, shifts in phenology are also important in and of themselves. Although plant reproductive phenology generally advances with warming temperatures (Ellwood *et al.* 2013, Cleland *et al.* 2007), certain species may not have sufficient capacity to make the behavioral or evolutionary changes necessary to keep pace with a changing climate (Cook *et al.* 2012, Visser and Both 2005). Mechanistically, species respond to different environmental signals, such as growing season temperatures, day length, snowmelt timing, and chilling requirements (Keller and Körner 2014, Lamber *et al.* 2010, Schwartz and Hanes 2010, Clark *et al.* 2013). In the context of phenological progressions, differential responses may lead to timing mismatches among plant populations or among plant-animal communities, including pollinators or herbivores (Parmesan 2006; Post 2008). Even when a phenological shift in response to temperature

cues is adaptive, it can also expose a species to new threats, including novel temperature, water, or pest conditions.

Here, we review the results of recent research by scientists, including us and our colleagues, on how *Rhododendron* flowering times respond to climate change. We focus particularly on results from our fieldwork in the eastern Himalayas, and conclude with some thoughts about the potential benefits of a network of *Rhododendron* scientists and growers to collect uniquely relevant data on the phenological responses of common species to varying climatic conditions.

### Rhododendrons of the Eastern Himalayas

The eastern Himalaya and associated Hengduan Mountains of China are among the world's richest areas for temperate plant species (Mittermeier *et al.* 2005, Mutke and Barthlott 2005), and the region is particularly rich in rhododendrons. Out of the perhaps 1000 *Rhododendron* species in the world, 30-50% are found in this area and many are endemic to it, being found nowhere else (Wu *et al.* 1996). *Rhododendron* species richness is particularly great in the area that contains extreme north-eastern Myanmar, the southeastern section of the Tibetan Autonomous Region (Xizang Province) and adjoining parts of Arunachal Pradesh, southwestern Sichuan Province, and northwestern Yunnan Province (Figure 1). Here, biogeographic connectivity, topographic heterogeneity, and climate seasonality have all been suggested to drive this richness (Wen *et al.* 2014, Shrestha *et al.* 2017). Using data from the *Atlas of Woody*



Figure 1. *Rhododendron* species are particularly rich in the eastern Himalayan and Hengduan region, where a relatively small area holds hundreds of species. The green area indicates the region where Shrestha *et al.* 2017 document >100 species / 50x50 km grid cell.

*Plants in China* (Fang *et al.* 2011), Shrestha *et al.* (2017) estimated *Rhododendron* species richness in 50 x 50 km grid cells and found that it frequently exceeded 100 *Rhododendron* species in a single grid cell. The eastern Himalaya also constitute a highly threatened area for rhododendrons. Yu *et al.* (2017) described 12 general hotspots for rhododendrons based on 10 x 10 km grid spatial analysis. They recognized five hotspots of threatened species: in southern Chongqing, south-eastern Tibet, north-western Yunnan, south-western Sichuan and northern Guangdong. These largely overlap with the general eastern Himalayan/Hengduan hotspot.

In addition to the effects of climate on *Rhododendron* flowering time, there are also effects on where rhododendrons are able to grow. With ongoing warming, we can predict future changes in the geographic range of suitable climate for Himalayan across the Himalayas (Figure 2). The shift northwards and up in elevation that this predicts is borne out by *Rhododendron* shrub encroachment up mountain slopes and into mountain meadows, which can be quantified from remote sensing (Brandt *et al.* 2013). However, although rhododendrons may respond to climate change with changes in phenology on an annual basis, as woody and relatively long-lived species, their ability

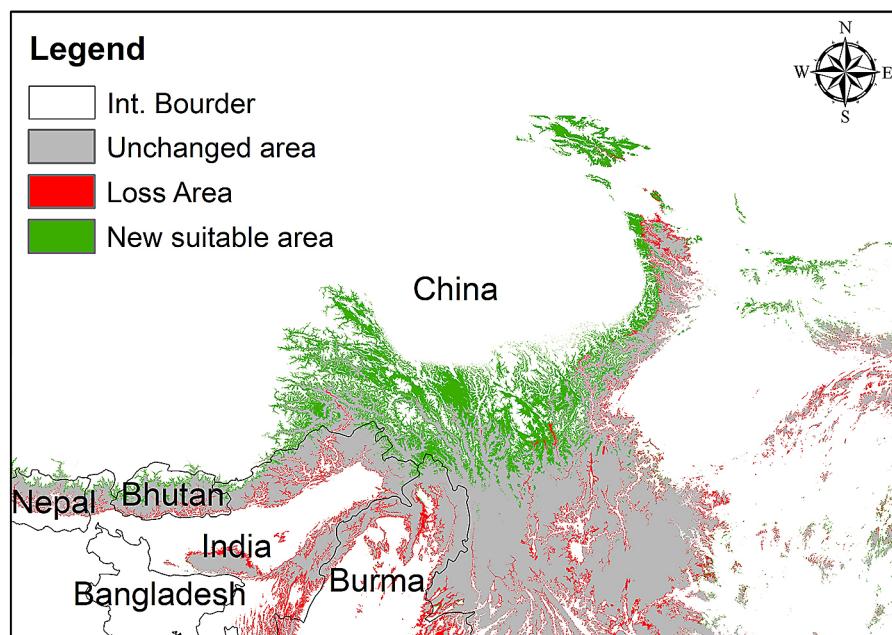


Figure 2. Shift of the bioclimatic suitability for rhododendrons in a climate warming scenario (the 2050 IPCC5 scenarios ensembled layer for all the models for RCP 2.6, compared to baseline climate 1960-2000).

to change geographic ranges must be much slower. In fact, it has been suggested that current Himalayan *Rhododendron* populations at low elevations may be remnants from larger populations present during a cooler period 150–500 years ago (Vetaas, 2002).

In addition to being exceptionally rich in *Rhododendron* species, the eastern Himalaya are also extraordinarily well-represented with historical collections of rhododendrons, thanks to plant hunters including Frank Kingdon Ward (quoted above), as well as Jean Marie Delavayi, Heinrich Handel-Mazzetti, George Forrest, Joseph Rock, George Ludlow and Frank Sheriff, Yu Dejun and Feng Goumei. Many of the species rhododendrons and parents of the hybrids now in cultivation stem from seed collections made by these botanists. The voucher specimens—dried flowers with associated labels data on the time and place of collection—that these collectors made remain housed in herbaria around the world (Hart *et al.* 2014).

Of course, indigenous Himalayan peoples had been encountering rhododendrons long before these botanists arrived. Throughout the Himalaya, rhododendrons have been objects of both utilitarian value (including for craft, firewood, food and medicine) and cultural significance (including as a symbol in religion and art, and as with growers around the world, a source of aesthetic pleasure; Georgian and Emshwiller 2013, Hart and Salick 2017, Kunwar *et al.* 2006).

### **Rhododendrons as an indicator of Himalayan climate**

Although phenological events—especially those in the spring—generally *advance* in date with warming temperatures, moving earlier into the spring, this is not especially evident in the Himalayan and Tibetan Plateau region (Klein *et al.* 2014). This is despite the fact that this area has been warming, and is modeled to continue to show increases in temperature 1.5–1.75 times greater than the global mean increase (IPCC 2013). In 2009–2013, we set out to use focused, cross-disciplinary studies of *Rhododendron* phenology to better understand how changes in the Himalayan climate were affecting Himalayan plants. We expected that rhododendrons, with 1) an array of species flowering across elevations and throughout the season, 2) visually salient flowers, and 3) an excellent record in natural history collections, would be an excellent study system to leverage traditional ecological transect methods against (Hart and Salick 2018), to obtain anecdotal information through interviews with indigenous people (Hart and Salick 2017) and for quantitative analysis of relevant data from herbarium collections (Hart *et al.* 2014).

### **Himalayan rhododendron phenology and ecological monitoring**

To gain direct observational and experimental understandings of how *Rhododendron* phenology is structured and may respond to climate change, we tracked flowering

over two years in an assemblage of ten co-occurring Himalayan *Rhododendron* species (Figure 3) on Mt. Yulong in Northwest Yunnan (Hart and Salick 2018). Our monitoring spanned an elevation range of 2600–4200 m above sea level, and flowering times from February to August. We also moved plants of two *Rhododendron* species, *R. hippophaeoides* and *R. racemosum*, into a greenhouse to artificially increase air temperatures. Across the elevational transects, we monitored rhododendrons on several transects every 100 meters of elevation by tagging twelve plants of each species present, and counting the number of inflorescences on each plant budding, in open flower, with finished flowers, and with mature fruits twice-monthly.

Overall, we observed advanced phenology in response to warmer temperatures, with earlier flowering at lower elevations (or, ~5 days later with each 100 meters up in elevation), in the warmer year (~2.5 days earlier per 1°C annual average temperature increase) and in the greenhouse treatments (~9 days earlier per 1°C difference in annual average temperature). We observed similar trends further west at Mt. Kanchenjunga in Nepal, where flowering of *R. arboreum* was 4.3–5.8 days difference per 100 m elevation (Ranjitkar et al. 2012). However, within this broad pattern of elevation-dependent phenology, other environmental and habitat qualities also had significant impacts on flowering time. Among the diverse species monitored on Mt. Yulong, the degree and even direction of phenological response to temperature varied. At the level of individual plants, there were clear fitness implications of the phenological shift: plants that responded to annual temperature increases by flowering modestly earlier with the warmer temperatures had the greatest reproductive success.

We were also able to test the apparently sequenced progression of flowering in the Mt. Yulong *Rhododendron* assemblage, and found evidence that there was indeed less overlap in flowering times in co-occurring *Rhododendron* species than expected by chance. Recently, a similar effect has been recorded in an assemblage of *Rhododendron* species in Sikkim (S. Bassnett, pers. comm. 2018). Given differential responses to changing climate, this suggests that hybrid barriers, floral visitor partitioning, or other functions of sequenced progressions may be vulnerable to ongoing climate change.

### Himalayan *Rhododendron* phenology: local knowledge

Even given these differential responses among species, we might expect the clear and consistent effects of warmer temperatures on flowering would have resulted in gradual earlier flowering over time in the genus as a whole. Temperatures in the Mt. Yulong area, as in other areas across the eastern Himalaya, have been warming for the last 60 years, and at a faster rate for the last 30 years or so (Hart et al. 2014). In order to gain a longer-term perspective than our two-year ecological monitoring study could offer, we conducted interviews with rural village residents of Naxi and Yi ethnicities who

live around Mt. Yulong. We began with the hypothesis that the sequential and visually salient flowering of rhododendrons would have a place in local culture, and that local people would notice and report its phenology responses to a changing climate. Using photographs of *Rhododendron* species we asked 80 respondents in eight villages about *Rhododendron* species identities, names, uses, flowering times and their elevation distributions, and the changes in *Rhododendron* characteristics that they noticed over time.

The interviews revealed a rich knowledge base intimately connected to the seasonal and elevational progression of *Rhododendron* flowering (Hart and Salick 2017). Many species were differentiated by local names, and their uses included for fire wood, food, fodder, medicines for both people and livestock, and as a nectar source for honeybees. They were used in rituals, were an important part of seasonal festivals, and were an indicator in the ecological calendar. A similar attention to rhododendron seasonal and elevational progressions was evidenced in eastern Nepal (Ranjitkar 2012) and elsewhere in the eastern Himalaya, where rhododendrons serve diverse uses, including a beverage. Around Mt. Yulong, this knowledge came with broad consensus on the sequential progression of *Rhododendron* flowerings, and throughout the interviews, the connections of this progression to the seasons emerged as a crosscutting theme. For example, the flowering of the “buckwheat rhododendron,” called *shouxma mgepqy* in the local Yi language, traditionally signaled to Yi informants the correct time to plant buckwheat (*Fagopyrum tataricum* or *F. esculentum*). However, indicators like these were reported to be now losing their value to the community, as the majority of interviewees reported confusing changes to the phenological sequence, with the flowering time of species now unpredictable in any given year.

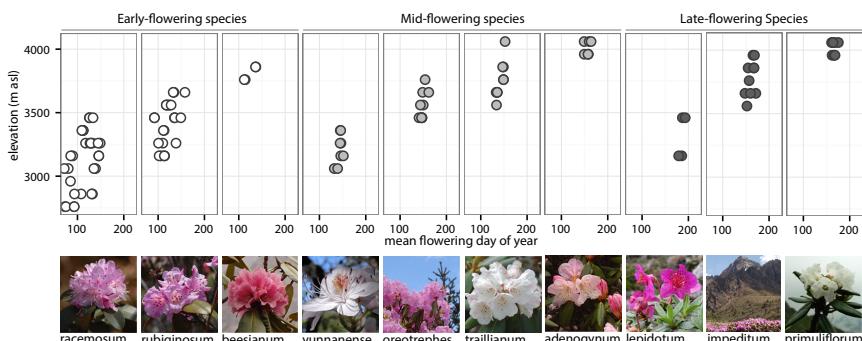


Figure 3. At Mt. Yulong, flowering times of rhododendrons in a given season are dispersed over elevation, and species within an elevational band flower in sequential progression. Each pane shows the elevation and mean flowering day of populations of one *Rhododendron* species. Shades indicate seasonal cohorts based on species mean flowering time: early-season (before day 130), mid-season (between day 130 and 160), and late-season (after day 160).

However, despite this attention to phenology, local people did not report observing a long-term advance in *Rhododendron* flowering time. To some extent, this was a surprise—if rhododendrons showed such clear responses to warming in our short-term ecological study, why then did local people not observe a change across the past several decades of warming temperatures? It could be that, historically, such close observations were never important, or that, with development, the local community had diverted towards different livelihoods and no longer pay close attention to such indicators. Such a transition has been observed in the Sagarmatha (Mt. Everest) and other popular tourism regions of Nepal, where extreme differences in livelihoods are evident between intensively visited trekking areas and the more remote areas just a few kilometers away. In Nepal, this division of livelihoods corresponds with a clear difference in perceptions of seasonal indicators and their use to time agricultural activities. A similar knowledge gradient is clear in the Mt. Yulong area between rural and urban areas (Hart and Salick 2017).

In this case of Yulong rhododendrons, the local observation—of no long-term advance—was borne out by a separate source of longer-term data, the *Rhododendron* specimens preserved in herbaria.

### Himalayan *Rhododendron* phenology: natural history collections

Although herbarium specimens were collected to delineate and define new species, they and their associated labels also constitute a wealth of data on *when* and *where* Himalayan rhododendrons have flowered over the past century. There has been a recent explosion in the application of data from herbarium specimens to looking at long term responses to drivers such as climate change. These have included aspects of plant spatial ranges (Loiselle *et al.* 2007, Hereford *et al.* 2017), morphology (Law and Salick 2005, Beauvais *et al.* 2017), medicinal value (Souza and Hawkins 2017), and phenology (Primack *et al.* 2004, Willis *et al.* 2017). Increased attention has also been brought to refining methods which recognize the non-random way in which herbarium specimens are collected and attempt to quantify and account for their biases (Meyer *et al.* 2016, Daru *et al.* 2018).

To gain a deeper historical context for how rhododendrons of Mt. Yulong have been responding to annual changes in temperature, we photographed more than 10,000 herbarium specimens of the *Rhododendron* species that occur on Mt. Yulong (Hart *et al.* 2014). We supplemented the data available on these specimens with information from collector field books, diaries, and maps, and were able to extract reliable dates of collection and elevations of flowering for 1147 specimens. Using these data, we were able to corroborate the lack of directional change in mean flowering time over the recent decades of rapid warming which had been reported in our interviews with local

people. We were also able to suggest a possible explanation for the observed short-term responses not resulting in long-term directional changes. Using our record and seasonal data on temperatures from the Global Historical Climate Network (Lawrimore *et al.* 2011) we showed that mean flowering time advances with annual warming (2.27 days earlier per 1°C of warming) but is delayed with fall warming (2.54 days later per 1°C warming). This may be due to the effects of especially warm falls delaying the chilling that is physiologically required before overwintering buds will break dormancy and begin their spring growth.

The model we derived from herbarium specimens, some dating back more than 100 years, took into account annual warming, fall warming, and elevation. It matched the observations of local people, and also fit with our ecological observations.

### New opportunities for monitoring *Rhododendron* phenology

In this work on Himalayan rhododendrons, the authors have seen the advantages of leveraging information and data from diverse sources. Although we are not the first to employ the specimens of past plant hunters and the knowledge of local peoples to inform and evaluate ecological hypotheses, it is worth reiterating what a wealth of useful data these sources represent. In the spirit of this *Rhododendron* research initiative, we would also like to make the point that rhododendrons in horticultural contexts represent a similar opportunity for data collection across broad spatial gradients.

Attention has recently been drawn to the value of *botanical gardens* in monitoring projects such as those discussed here (Primack and Miller-Rushing 2009), and data from well-documented personal plantings should be equally valuable. In many cases, well-known species are planted across a wide variety of climates and microclimates, offering an excellent opportunity for comparisons to be made. In some cases, such as the subscription-based seed collections of some of the early plant hunters in the Himalaya, documented wild seed collections have subsequently been distributed to both botanical gardens and private collections around the world. This opens up the unique opportunity to study the phenological behavior of close genetic relatives both in their native populations and simultaneously in widely distributed gardens in diverse climatic situations.

One small example of the potential of this sort of comparison is for *R. yunnanense*, which in our monitoring on Mt. Yulong was the exception to many of the generic patterns we observed. *R. yunnanense* flowered later than predicted by the herbarium-derived model, later with warmer annual temperatures, and without a significant change in flowering time over elevation. Intriguingly, plantings of *R. yunnanense* at the Royal Botanic Gardens Edinburgh (RBGE) monitored in the years 2002–2009 also flowered later with warmer temperatures (Harper *et al.* 2010).

To more systematically leverage this type of opportunity, it might be important for a nascent rhododendron network to take steps such as:

- a) identifying which gardens and living collections already have legacy (e.g., Wade 1979) or ongoing (as at RBGE) phenological observations that include rhododendrons;
- b) identifying species of interest and possibilities for linked monitoring of wild source-populations and garden plants;
- c) tracking specific seed collections and lineages with archival or population-genetic methods; and
- d) reviewing new tools recently promulgated to help with distributed data collection (e.g., Nature's Notebook [www.usanpn.org/natures\\_notebook](http://www.usanpn.org/natures_notebook)) and analysis (Hufkens *et al.* 2018) in wide-spread phenological monitoring projects.

This could be followed by designing or adopting a simple method for phenological monitoring. The monitoring method we mention above was shaped by the realities of transects across 1500+ elevational meters, but was also designed to be amenable both to quantitative analysis and to the methods used at the RBGE. A useful method in such a dispersed network would benefit from being easy to apply and record across diverse environments, while at the same time allowing comparison to data from existing legacy or ongoing data collection initiatives.

Ultimately, the benefits of such a network are not just in providing data to advance our understandings of plant responses to climate change, but also in recognizing what Anna Lawrence (2009) called “a more deeply integrated connection between observation and meaning.” In this instance, it is a meaning that stems from the beauty of a *Rhododendron* coming into flower. This beauty is recognized alike by those who have lived with rhododendrons near their Himalayan villages, those who have collected and dispersed them, those who study them, and those who grow them.

## Bibliography

- Aono, Y., and K. Kazui. 2008. Phenological Data Series of Cherry Tree Flowering in Kyoto, Japan, and Its Application to Reconstruction of Springtime Temperatures Since the 9th Century. *International Journal of Climatology* 28 (7): 905–14. doi:10.1002/joc.1594.
- Armatas, C.A., T.J. Venn, B.B. McBride, A.E. Watson, and S.J. Carver. 2016. Opportunities to Utilize Traditional Phenological Knowledge to Support Adaptive Management of Social-Ecological Systems Vulnerable to Changes in Climate and Fire Regimes. *Ecology and Society* 21 (1): 16–13. doi:10.5751/ES-07905-210116.
- Basler, D. 2016. Evaluating Phenological Models for the Prediction of Leaf-Out Dates

- in Six Temperate Tree Species Across Central Europe. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology* 217: 10–21. doi:10.1016/j.agrformet.2015.11.007.
- Basnett, S. (in prep). Reproductive phenology of Rhododendron species in Eastern Himalaya: Influence of phylogeny and abiotic factors.
- Bawa, K., and S. Kadur. 2013. *Himalaya*. Felis Creations Pvt Ltd.
- Beauvais, M.-P., S. Pellerin, J. Dubé, and Claude Lavoie. 2017. Herbarium Specimens as Tools to Assess the Impact of Large Herbivores on Plant Species. *Botany* 95: 153–62. doi:10.1139/cjb-2016-0206.
- Brandt, J.S., M.A. Haynes, T. Kuemmerle, D.M. Waller, and V.C. Radeloff. 2013. Regime shift on the roof of the world: Alpine meadows converting to shrublands in the southern Himalayas. *Biological Conservation* 158: 116–127.
- Chuine, I., P. Yiou, N. Viovy, B. Seguin, V. Daux, and E.L.R. Ladurie. 2004. Historical Phenology: Grape Ripening as a Past Climate Indicator. *Nature* 432: 289–90. doi:10.1038/432289a.
- Clark, J.S., J. Melillo, J. Mohan, and C. Salk. 2013. The Seasonal Timing of Warming That Controls Onset of the Growing Season. *Global Change Biology* 20: 1136–45. doi:10.1111/gcb.12420.
- Cleland, E.E., I. Chuine, A. Menzel, H.A. Mooney, and M.D. Schwartz. 2007. Shifting Plant Phenology in Response to Global Change. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* 22: 357–65. doi:10.1016/j.tree.2007.04.003.
- Cook, B.I., and E.M. Wolkovich. 2016. Climate Change Decouples Drought From Early Wine Grape Harvests in France. *Nature Climate Change* 6: 715–19. doi:10.1038/nclimate2960.
- Cook, B.I., E.M. Wolkovich, and C. Parmesan. 2012. Divergent Responses to Spring and Winter Warming Drive Community Level Flowering Trends. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 109: 9000–9005. doi:10.1073/pnas.1118364109.
- Daru, B.H., D.S. Park, R.B. Primack, C.G. Willis, D.S. Barrington, T.J.S. Whitfeld, T.G. Seidler, et al. 2018. Widespread Sampling Biases in Herbaria Revealed From Large-Scale Digitization. *The New Phytologist* 217: 939–55. doi:10.1111/nph.14855.
- Ellwood, E.R., S.A. Temple, R.B. Primack, N.L. Bradley, and C.C. Davis. 2013. Record-Breaking Early Flowering in the Eastern United States *PLoS One* 8 (1). Public Library of Science: e53788. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0053788.
- Fang, J.Y., Wang Z.H., and Tang Z.Y. 2011. *Atlas of Woody Plants in China*. Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer Science & Business Media. doi:10.1007/978-3-642-15017-3.
- Fitter, A.H. 2002. “Rapid Changes in Flowering Time in British Plants.” *Science* 296: 1689–91. doi:10.1126/science.1071617.

- Ge, Q.S., Wang H.J., Zheng J.Y, R. This, and Dai J.H. 2014. A 170Year Spring Phenology Index of Plants in Eastern China. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Biogeosciences* 119 (3). Wiley-Blackwell: 301–11. doi:10.1002/2013JG002565.
- Georgian, E., and E. Emshwiller. 2013. Shared and Separate Knowledge Among Eight Cultural Groups Based on Ethnobotanical Uses of Rhododendron (Ericaceae) in Yunnan Province, China. *Economic Botany* 67 (3). Springer US: 191–202. doi:10.1007/s12231-013-9235-6.
- Harper, G., D.G. Mann, and R. Thompson. 2010. Phenological Monitoring at Royal Botanic Garden Edinburgh. *Sibbaldia* 2: 33–45.
- Hart, R., and J. Salick. 2018. Vulnerability of Phenological Progressions Over Season and Elevation to Climate Change: Rhododendrons of Mt. Yulong. *Perspectives in Plant Ecology, Evolution and Systematics* 34:129-139 doi.org/10.1016/j.ppees.2018.09.001
- Hart, R., and J. Salick. 2017. Dynamic Ecological Knowledge Systems Amid Changing Place and Climate: Mt. Yulong Rhododendrons. *Journal of Ethnobiology* 37 (1): 21–36. doi:10.2993/0278-0771-37.1.21.
- Hart, R., J. Salick, S. Ranjitkar, and Xu J.C. 2014. Herbarium Specimens Show Contrasting Phenological Responses to Himalayan Climate. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 111 (29). National Acad Sciences: 10615–19. doi:10.1073/pnas.1403376111.
- Hereford, J., J. Schmitt, and D. D. Ackerly. 2017. The Seasonal Climate Niche Predicts Phenology and Distribution of an Ephemeral Annual Plant, *Mollugo Verticillata*. Edited by Akiko Satake. *Journal of Ecology* 105 (5): 1323–34. doi:10.1111/1365-2745.12739.
- Huang, Z.-H., Song Y.-P., and Huang S.-Q. 2017. Evidence for Passerine Bird Pollination in *Rhododendron* Species. *AoB Plants* 9 (6): 631–10. doi:10.1093/aobpla/plx062.
- Hufkens, K., D. Basler, T. Milliman, E. K. Melaas, and A. D. Richardson. 2018. An Integrated Phenology Modelling Framework in R. Edited by Sarah Goslee. *Methods in Ecology and Evolution* 8 (February): e57373. doi:10.1111/2041-210X.12970.
- IPCC. 2013. *Climate Change 2013: the Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge University Press.
- Keller, F., and C. Körner. 2014. The Role of Photoperiodism in Alpine Plant Development. *Arctic, Antarctic, and Alpine Research* 35 (3): 361–68.
- Klein, J. A., K. A. Hopping, E. T. Yeh, Y. Nyima, R. B. Boone, and K. A. Galvin. 2014. Unexpected Climate Impacts on the Tibetan Plateau: Local and Scientific Knowledge in Findings of Delayed Summer. *Global Environmental Change* 28 (September). Elsevier Ltd: 141–52. doi:10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2014.03.007.
- Kunwar, R. M., B. K. Nepal, H. B. Kshhetri, S. K. Rai, and R. W. Bussmann. 2006.

- Ethnomedicine in Himalaya: a Case Study From Dolpa, Humla, Jumla and Mustang Districts of Nepal. *Journal of Ethnobiology and Ethnomedicine* 2 (1): 27–27. doi:10.1186/1746-4269-2-27.
- Lambert, A. M., A. J. Miller-Rushing, and D. W. Inouye. 2010. Changes in Snowmelt Date and Summer Precipitation Affect the Flowering Phenology of *Erythronium Grandiflorum* (Glacier Lily; Liliaceae). *American Journal of Botany* 97 (9): 1431–37. doi:10.3732/ajb.1000095.
- Lantz, T. C., and N. J. Turner. 2003. Traditional Phenological Knowledge of Aboriginal Peoples in British Columbia. *Journal of Ethnobiology* 23 (2): 263–86.
- Law, W., and J. Salick. 2005. Human-Induced Dwarfing of Himalayan Snow Lotus, *Saussurea Laniceps* (Asteraceae). *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 102 (29): 10218–20. doi:10.1073/pnas.0502931102.
- Lawrence, A. 2009. The First Cuckoo in Winter: Phenology, Recording, Credibility and Meaning in Britain. *Global Environmental Change* 19 (2): 173–79. doi:10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2009.01.006.
- Lawrimore, J. H., M. J. Menne, B. E. Gleason, C. N. Williams, D. B. Wuertz, R. S. Vose, and J. Rennie. 2011. An Overview of the Global Historical Climatology Network Monthly Mean Temperature Data Set, Version 3. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 116 (D19): D19121. doi:10.1029/2011JD016187.
- Loiselle, B. A., P. M. Jørgensen, T. Consiglio, I. Jiménez, J. G. Blake, L. G. Lohmann, and O. M. Montiel. 2007. Predicting Species Distributions From Herbarium Collections: Does Climate Bias in Collection Sampling Influence Model Outcomes? *Journal of Biogeography* 35 (September): 105–16. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2699.2007.01779.x.
- Meyer, C., P. Weigelt, and H. Kreft. 2016. Multidimensional Biases, Gaps and Uncertainties in Global Plant Occurrence Information. Edited by J. H. R. Lambers. *Ecology Letters* 19 (8). Wiley/Blackwell (10.1111): 992–1006. doi:10.1111/ele.12624.
- Miller-Rushing, A. J., and R. B. Primack. 2008. Global Warming and Flowering Times in Thoreau's Concord: a Community Perspective. *Ecology* 89 (2): 332–41. doi:10.1890/07-0068.1.
- Mittermeier, R. A., P. R. Gil, M. Hoffman, J. Pilgrim, T. Brooks, C. Goettsch, J. L. Mittermeier, and G. A. B. Da Fonseca. 2005. Hotspots Revisited: Earth's Biologically Richest and Most Endangered Terrestrial Ecoregions. Conservation International.
- Mutke, J., and W. Barthlott. 2005. Patterns of Vascular Plant Diversity at Continental to Global Scales. *Biologiske Skrifter* 55: 521–31.
- Nabhan, G. P. 2010. Perspectives in Ethnobiology: Ethnophenology and Climate Change. *Journal of Ethnobiology* 30 (1): 1–4. doi:10.2993/0278-0771-30.1.1.

- Parmesan, C. 2006. Ecological and Evolutionary Responses to Recent Climate Change. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics* 37 (1): 637–69. doi:10.1146/annurev.ecolsys.37.091305.110100.
- Post, E. 2008. Warming, Plant Phenology and the Spatial Dimension of Trophic Mismatch for Large Herbivores. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences* 275: 2005–13.
- Primack, D., C. Imbres, R. B. Primack, A. J. Miller-Rushing, and P. Del Tredici. 2004. Herbarium Specimens Demonstrate Earlier Flowering Times in Response to Warming in Boston. *American Journal of Botany* 91 (8): 1260–64. doi:10.3732/ajb.91.8.1260.
- Primack, R. B., and A. J. Miller-Rushing. 2009. The Role of Botanical Gardens in Climate Change Research. *New Phytologist* 182 (2): 303–13. doi:10.1111/j.1469-8137.2009.02800.x.
- Ranjitkar, S., E. Luedeling, K. K. Shrestha, K.Y. Guan, J.C. Xu: Flowering phenology of tree *Rhododendron* along an elevation gradient in two sites in the Eastern Himalayas. *International Journal of Biometeorology* 2012; 57: 225-240.
- Ranjitkar, S., R. Kindt, N. M. Sujakhu, R. Hart, G. Wen, X. F. Yang, K. K. Shrestha, J. C. Xu and E. Luedeling. 2014a. Separation of the bioclimatic spaces of Himalayan tree *Rhododendron* species predicted by ensemble suitability models. *Global Ecology and Conservation* 1: 2-12. doi:10.1016/j.gecco.2014.07.001
- Ranjitkar, S., N. M. Sujakhu, R. Jati, J. C. Xu, D. Schmidt-Vogt. 2014b: Yield and household consumption of *Rhododendron arboreum* as a fuelwood species in Eastern Nepal. *Biomass and Bioenergy* 61: 245-253.
- Schwartz, M. D., and J. M. Hanes. 2010. Continental-Scale Phenology: Warming and Chilling, *International Journal of Climatology* 30 (11). John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.: 1595–98. doi:10.1002/joc.2014.
- Shrestha, N., X.Y. Su, X.T. Su and Z.H Wang. 2017. The Drivers of High *Rhododendron* diversity in South-West China: Does Seasonality Matter? *Journal of Biogeography* 45 (2): 438–47. doi:10.1111/jbi.13136.
- Souza, E. N. F., and J. A. Hawkins. 2017. Comparison of Herbarium Label Data and Published Medicinal Use: Herbaria as an Underutilized Source of Ethnobotanical Information. *Economic Botany* 71 (1). Springer US: 1–12. doi:10.1007/s12231-017-9367-1.
- Visser, M. E., and C. Both. 2005. Shift in Phenology Due to Global Climate Change: the Need for a Yardstick. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences* 272: 2561–69.
- Wade, L. K. 1979. *Phenology of Cultivated Rhododendrons*. Vancouver: The Botanical

Garden, University of British Columbia.

- Ward, F. K., K. N. E. Cox, K. R. Storm, and I. Baker. 2008 [1926]. *Frank Kingdon Ward's Riddle of the Tsangpo Gorges*. Antique Collectors Club Limited.
- Wen, J., J.-Q. Zhang, Z.-L. Nie, Y. Zhong, and H. Sun. 2014. Evolutionary Diversifications of Plants on the Qinghai-Tibetan Plateau. *Frontiers in Genetics* 5. Frontiers Media SA: 4. doi:10.3389/fgene.2014.00004.
- Willis, C. G., E. R. Ellwood, R. B. Primack, C. C. Davis, K. D. Pearson, A. S. Gallinat, J. M. Yost, et al. 2017. Old Plants, New Tricks: Phenological Research Using Herbarium Specimens. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* 32 (7): 531–46. doi:10.1016/j.tree.2017.03.015.
- Wu, Z.Y., P. H. Raven, and Missouri Botanical Garden. 1996. *Flora of China*. Missouri Botanical Garden Press.
- Yu, F.Y., A. K. Skidmore, T. J. Wang, J. H. Huang, K. P. Ma, T. A. Groen. 2017. *Rhododendron* diversity patterns and priority conservation areas in China. *Diversity and Distributions* 23: 1–14. <https://doi.org/10.1111/ddi.12607>

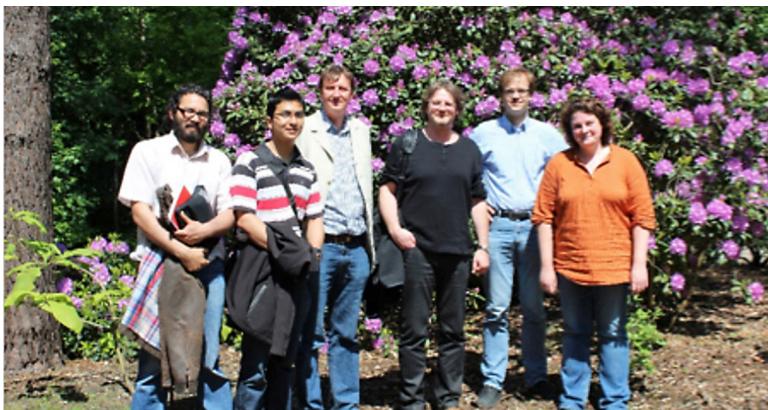
## **Section: Medicinal Chemistry**

### **Chapter 10**

---

# **Rhododendron Natural Products as Sources of Novel Antibiotics**

Nikolai Kuhnert, Inamullah Hakeem  
Said, Abhinandan Shrestha, Ahmed Rezk,  
Anne Grimbs, Jennifer Nolzen, Hartwig  
Schepker, Klaudia Brix, Dirk Albach and  
Matthias Ullrich



Researchers involved in Bremen *Rhododendron* project: From left to right, Ahmed Rezk, Abhi Shrestha, Nikolai Kuhnert, Matthias Ullrich, Dirk Albach and Jennifer Noelzen.

#### **Introduction**

Plants are admirable and creative chemists. Plants produce a myriad of natural products with fascinating and intricate chemical structures associated with fascinating biological activities. Plants have, over billions of years of evolution, created natural products as chemical solutions to their particular environmental challenges. The exact biological functions of most natural products is largely unknown to scientists, however, any compound produced by nature at a large energetic expense must be presumed to serve a purpose (Haslam 1986). As humans, we take advantage of these natural products in very different contexts. Most importantly, plants form the major part of our diet, containing nutrients, vitamins and further constituents maintaining and improving our health. Secondly, humans have exploited plants and extracts derived

from them, as sources of medicines. Traditional knowledge on the biological activity of plants has been transmitted and conserved over millennia by traditional healers and still helps today to relieve symptoms of disease or even cure diseases. Despite the triumph of allopathy, using synthetic drugs, over half of the global population still depends on medicinal plants as their primary source of healthcare. About half of all synthetic drugs are natural products themselves or derivatives of natural products, half of these of plant origin (Cragg *et al.* 2013, Saklani and Kutty 2008).

Consequently, investigating plant natural products constitutes a promising approach in discovering compounds with desirable biological activities, in particular medicinal properties. On our planet exist an estimated 400,000 different plant species (Firn and Jones 2003). Only a fraction of them has been investigated for their medicinal properties and an even smaller fraction investigated with respect to their chemical composition, leaving a lot of work to be done by scientists. *Rhododendron* forms no exception.

Why should, above all, *Rhododendron* be investigated as a potential source of new drugs? Firstly *Rhododendron* extracts are still used in a large number of ethno-medical applications for treatment of infections and cardiovascular diseases (Popescu and Kopp 2013). Secondly, *Rhododendron* species are found all over the world, except some regions in America and Africa, from temperate cold climates to tropical regions. Here, they needed to adapt and develop chemical solutions to a large diversity of environmental challenges. They are a diverse group of woody plants that belong to the family *Ericaceae* and are appreciated by the readers of this journal predominantly for their colorful flowers. Among the woody plants, *Rhododendron* is believed to be the most diverse genus with more than 1,200 species and countless cultivars described. Very few of them have been investigated for their biological activity and chemical composition (Jaiswal *et al.* 2012). Finally, the authors live in Bremen and Oldenburg, where the Rhododendron Park is a beloved local attraction, providing the world's second largest collection of *Rhododendron* plants. Hence, a fantastic source of study objects was available allowing to potentially valorize the plant collection while enjoying the beauty of the park.

In 2013, the Stiftung Deutscher Rhododendron Park decided on the initiative of its President the late Wolfgang Klunker, to use some of their funds to start a research project investigating the potential of *Rhododendron* as source of new antibiotic compounds. A multidisciplinary research team from Jacobs University Bremen and the University of Oldenburg, comprising expertise from phytochemistry, microbiology, botany, bioinformatics and cell biology started screening plant extracts for their antibacterial activity (Fig. 1). Some selected results of these investigations are summarized in the following sections, demonstrating clearly that *Rhododendron* does not only appeal and impress by the beauty of their flowers, but as well by their rich chemistry and promise for new medicines.

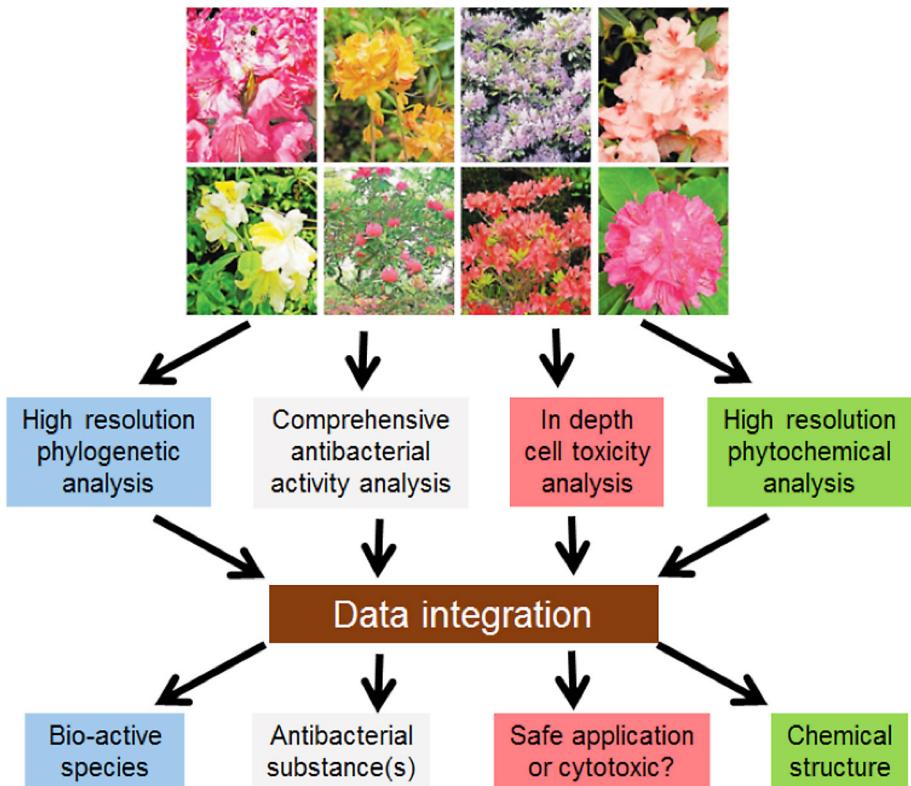


Figure 1: Basic approach of the Bremen *Rhododendron* project.

### Basic chemistry of *Rhododendron*

*Rhododendron* plants have been investigated on rare occasions, identifying some of their natural products. The most famous compound in *Rhododendron* is grayanotoxin (Fig. 2.1, Li *et al.* 2015, Chen *et al.* 2004). This toxic diterpene is mainly found in the flowers of several *Rhododendron* species and, after collection by bees, accumulating in honey. Following consumption of grayanotoxin-rich honey, an intoxication associated with perspiration, dizziness and vomiting, also referred to as mad honey disease, results. In antiquity, both Greek and Roman armies under Pompeius Magnus suffered heavy defeats following unintentional mad honey consumption.

The color of *Rhododendron* flowers is caused by anthocyanins (Fig. 2. Structures 2 and 3, Du *et al.* 2018). This particular class of compounds shows structural diversity and changes color upon change of flower tissue pH, co-pigmentation or metal complexation. Hence, a single class of compounds is responsible for the wide range of

beautiful *Rhododendron* flower color, in combination with adjustment of the pH value of the flower petal tissue. Many other flowers and fruit peels apply the same chemical principle.

*Rhododendrons* are furthermore rich in polyphenols. These compounds are generally known for their health benefits and popularized as antioxidants (Crozier *et al.* 2009). Polyphenols in *Rhododendron* are predominantly hydroxycinnamates (Fig. 2. Structure 4, Shrestha *et al.* 2017a) and proanthocyanidines (Fig. 2. Structure 6, Jaiswal *et al.* 2012) with structures that are equally encountered in many other edible plants such as red wine, dates, cranberry, cocoa, apples, coffee or tomatoes. Representative chemical structures of some natural products from *Rhododendron* are mentioned in Fig. 2.

### Phylogeny of *Rhododendron*

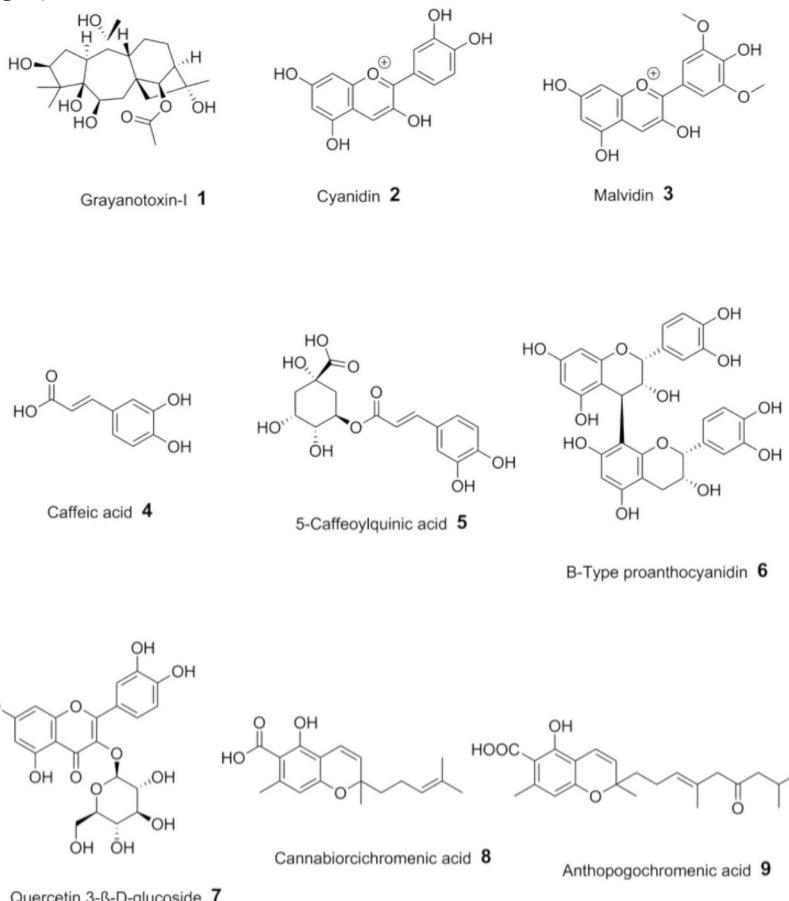


Figure 2: Representative chemical structures of selected natural products from *Rhododendron*.

Parallel to our search for novel antibiotics, we carried out detailed phylogenetic analyses of *Rhododendron* species, using a broad selection of DNA markers. This work supported recent reclassifications of *Rhododendron* on the subgenus and section level but also demonstrated large differences between plastid and nuclear DNA markers (Grimbs *et al.* 2017), which highlights the need for future phylogenomic analyses to resolve reliably the phylogenetic history of the genus.

With our updated phylogenetic tree in hand, we could address a series of basic scientific questions such as whether there is a correlation between phylogeny, biological activity and phytochemical profile. Antibacterial activity for example was predominantly observed in the subgenus *Rhododendron*. This finding reflects the bias of the chosen bacteria for screening, rather than the absence of antibacterial compounds in other subgenera. As another interesting finding, we observed that the ploidy level, which is the number of chromosome sets of a plant, has no influence on the number of natural products produced despite the fact that polyploidy predominates in groups rich in bioactive substances. Hence, an increased number of alleles does not necessarily lead to a richer and more diverse chemistry.

### **Chemotaxonomy of *Rhododendron***

In general, a typical *Rhododendron* plant produces between 50 and 300 different natural products. Most of them are common to all *Rhododendron* species and found widely in the plant kingdom. Some compounds, however, are unique to a certain subgenus or even plant species or hybrid. Identifying such compounds unique to a subgenus or even species is termed chemotaxonomy. With phylogenetic data and phytochemical profiles determined by liquid chromatography coupled to mass spectrometry (LC-MS), we could identify a series of such marker compounds. In particular, compounds from the class of hydroxycinnamates, a subgroup of polyphenols, were shown to be useful in this aspect (Shrestha *et al.* 2017a). Additionally, we investigated variations in chemical composition depending on the plant organs looking at leaves of different ages compared to flowers and fruits (Shrestha *et al.* 2017b). For few other plants, information of this type was available.

### **Antibiotics in *Rhododendron***

Why did we decide to look for new antibiotics in *Rhododendron*? Firstly, new antibiotics are desperately needed. A century ago, one third of the human population died from bacterial infections. This number has now dropped to below one percent, elevating modern antibiotics as medicinal chemistry's greatest triumph for humanity. However, many bacteria have ever since developed resistance to commercial antibiotics, necessitating novel active structures with new mechanisms of action (Payne *et al.* 2007).

At the same time, most big pharmaceutical companies have left the field of antibacterial research, for a combination of diverse factors including economic, scientific and political reasons (Silver 2011). Only two big pharmaceutical companies i.e., GSK and Sanofi are still actively pursuing antibacterial research. In the last two decades, only a single new antibiotic drug was launched to the market. Therefore, there is an urgent need to identify new promising structures.

In plants, many natural products aim at combatting bacterial pests. Plants are sessile organisms that cannot run away, so they need to find chemical solutions to fight off bacterial infections. Probably most plant natural products have evolved as chemical warfare agents against microorganisms and herbivores (Haslam 1986, Firn and Jones 2000, Firn 2004). The genus *Rhododendron* is exposed to multiple and diverse microbial environments growing in cold climate as well as in tropical regions on most continents. Thus, interesting structures must be expected possessing antibacterial properties.

Hence, we decided to screen around 200 different *Rhododendron* extracts for their antibacterial activity. This process involves several steps. Firstly, plant extracts are produced, which are tested in so-called agar plate diffusion assays, in which an antibacterial effect is established on a single selected bacterial strain. Around 20 *Rhododendron* extracts screened displayed the desired high antibacterial effect. For those minimal inhibitory concentrations (MICs) were determined to quantify their activity. Once identifying an antibacterial effect, we screened this extract for activity against a selection of further bacterial species to assess its effectiveness against other infectious agents (Rezk *et al.* 2015a).

A further 30 plant extracts displayed a lower antibacterial effect, most likely caused by a high concentration of polyphenol natural products. Polyphenols act in all plants as non-specific antibacterial agents against a broad spectrum of pest organisms. For medicinal use, they are unsuitable due to the high concentration required and their metabolic instability. They are typically metabolized by the gut microbiota. Many plants such as tea, coffee or quince utilize extremely high polyphenol concentrations in leaves or fruits, at times in the millimolar range, a million times higher than required for a drug, to combat pests.

In a second step, the toxicity for humans of the extract is assessed. For any antibiotic to be discovered, the compound in question must be toxic to bacteria, however at the same dose non-toxic to humans. Toxicity is very common in nature. Of the 400,000 plants on our planet an estimated 20,000- 40,000 are edible. All others are unpalatable or even toxic. Indeed, nature is the master of toxic compounds. Among the 50 most toxic compounds known to science, all are natural, not even one is of human synthetic origin. Consequently, as natural product scientists we are horrified by the common

concept that natural or organic equates in popular culture to benign and healthy, a bizarre if not preposterous concept advocated by irresponsible eco-ideologists.

Once a non-toxic extract with antibacterial activity is identified, in our work few extracts fell into this category (Figure 3; Rezk *et al.* 2015b), a process termed activity guided fractionation follows. Here, the extracts containing 50-300 detectable compounds are fractionated and retested. Active extracts are always kept and further purified until, at the very end, a pure chemical compound with the desired activity results. A combination of spectroscopic methods is then used to determine the chemical structure of the active compound, which could one day turn into a new antibiotic drug.

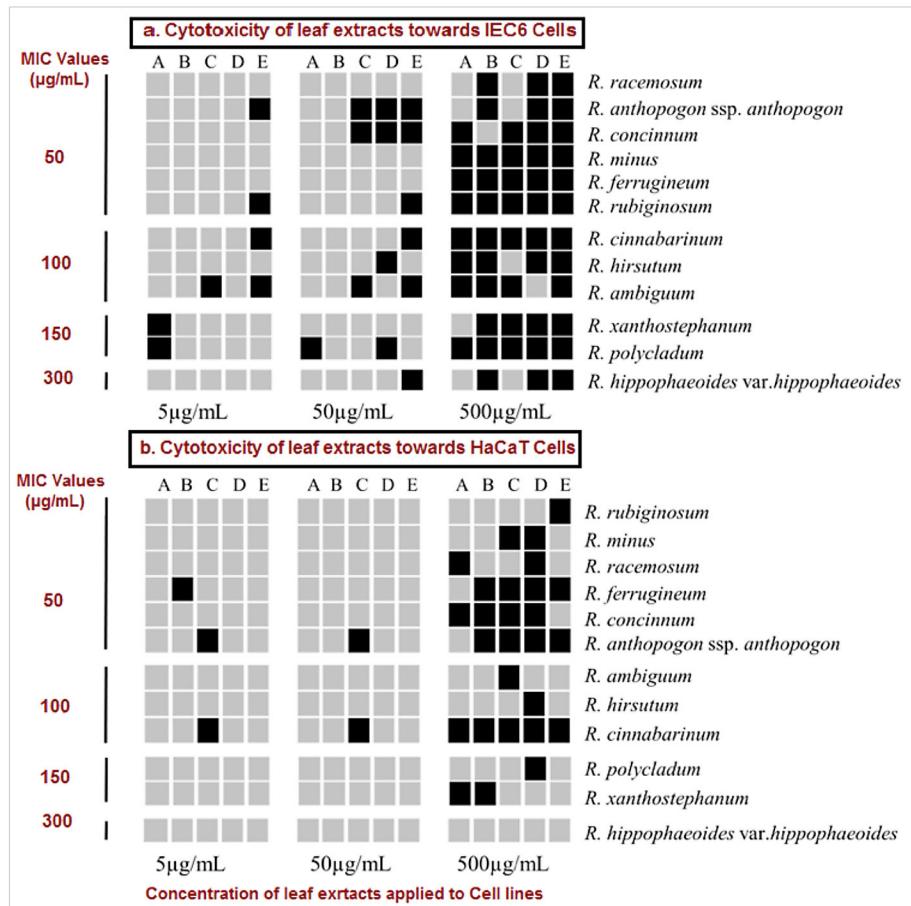


Figure 3: Summary of antibacterial testing and cytotoxicity assays cytotoxicity towards HaCaT cells and IEC-6 cells of *Rhododendron* extracts at different concentrations. Black boxes show an effect, grey boxes show no effect (Rezk *et al.* 2015b).

The highlight molecule we identified from *Rhododendron collettianum*, a species native to Afghanistan, is cannabiorcichromenic acid (CCA; Fig. 2. Structure 8, Said *et al.* 2017). This particular molecule not only displayed high antibacterial activity, it was as well non-toxic at antibacterial concentrations. From a structural point of view, it belongs to the class of the cannabinoid natural products, related in structure to the famous THC (tetrahydrocannabinol) found in cannabis. Since its publication, the compound has attracted interest from several sources, including producers of animal feeds requiring new antibiotics due to new legislation or the cosmetic industry looking for new antibacterial agents in deodorants. We will need to wait until further funding allows further development of this promising compound.

### Bioinformatic analysis of data

Through a combination of phytochemical profiles with antimicrobial susceptibility and cytotoxicity, complemented by phylogenetic analyses (Figure 4), we combined all our collected data to identify seven potentially antimicrobial active but non-cytotoxic compounds (Grimbs *et al.* 2017). Exemplary bioactivity-guided fractionation for a promising *Rhododendron* species experimentally supports in fact one of these candidate lead compounds. By combining categorical correlation analysis with Boolean operations, we have been able to investigate the origin of bioactive effects in further detail. Intriguingly, we discovered clear indications of systems effects (synergistic interactions and functional redundancies of compounds) in the manifestation of antimicrobial activities in this plant genus (Grimbs *et al.* 2017). Additionally, we discovered that statistical analysis of data allowed the prediction of antibacterial compounds prior to actual experimental verification (Said *et al.* 2017). This aspect of work might facilitate drug discovery using natural sources in the future.

### Conclusion

In summary, *Rhododendron* is exciting, not only due to gorgeous flowers but as well as a creative chemist. We could identify in excess of 300 different natural products in more than 100 *Rhododendron* extracts analyzed.

### References

- Chen, S.N., H.P. Zhang, L.Q. Wang, G.H. Bao, and G.W. Qin. 2004. Diterpenoids from the flowers of *Rhododendron molle*. *Journal of Natural Products* 67: 1903-1906.
- Cragg, G.M., and D.J. Newman. 2013. Natural products: A continuing source of novel drug leads. *Biochimica Et Biophysica Acta-General Subjects* 1830: 3670-3695.
- Crozier, A., I.B. Jaganath, and M.N. Clifford. 2009. Dietary phenolics: chemistry, bioavailability and effects on health. *Natural Product Reports* 26: 1001-1043.

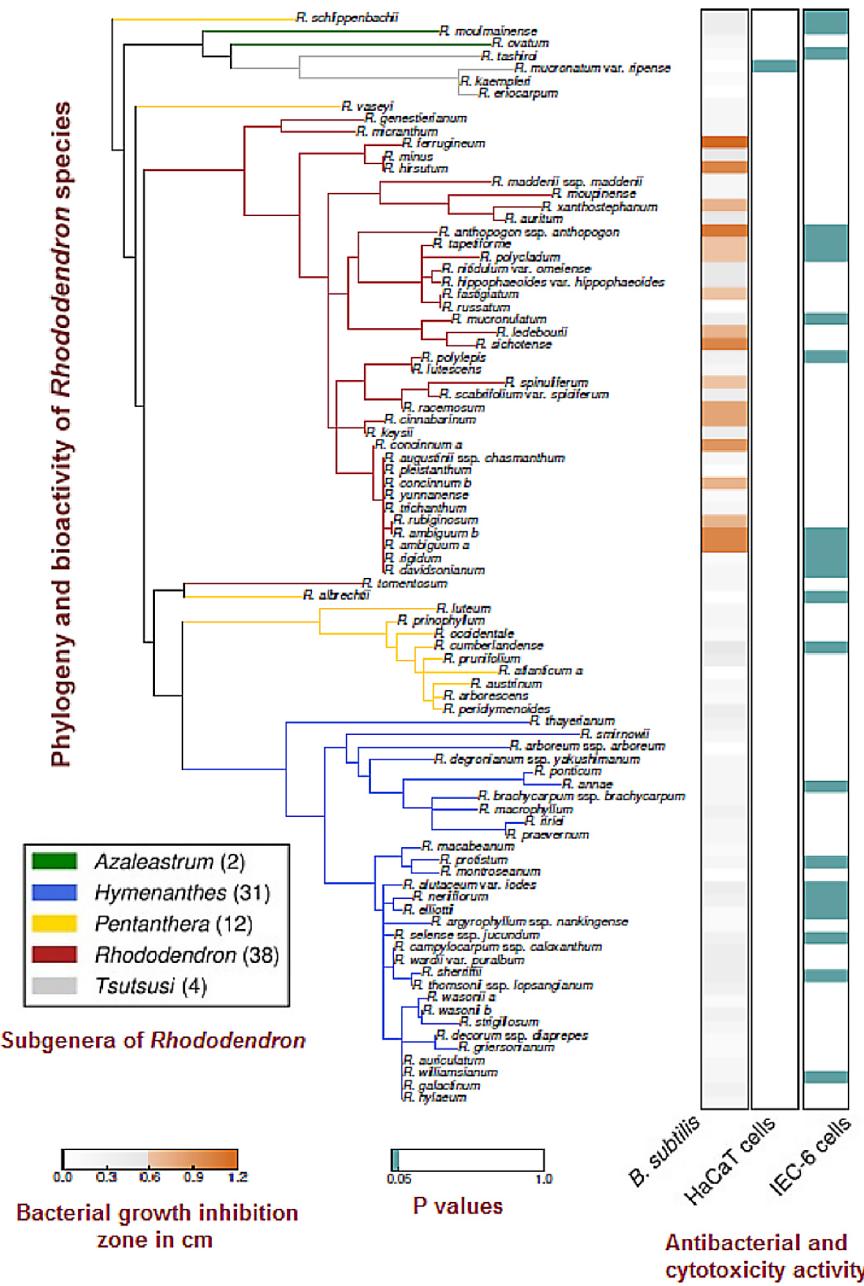


Figure 4: Phylogeny and bioactivities of *Rhododendron*. The phylogenetic tree of the 87 *Rhododendron* species is based on three genetic markers, *trnK*, *trnL-F*, and *ITS*. The three panels show the antimicrobial activity against *B. subtilis* (left), and the cytotoxicity towards HaCaT cells (middle) and IEC-6 cells (right) with respect to the given threshold and significance level, respectively (Grimbs *et al.* 2017).

- Du, H., L. Lai, F. Wang, W. Sun, L. Zhang, X. Li, L. Wang, L. Jiang, and Y. Zheng. 2018. Characterisation of flower colouration in 30 *Rhododendron* species via anthocyanin and flavonol identification and quantitative traits. *Plant Biology* 20: 121-129.
- Firn, R. 2004 Plant intelligence: an alternative point of view. *Annals of Botany* 93: 345-351.
- Firn, R.D., and C.G. Jones. 2000. The evolution of secondary metabolism - a unifying model. *Molecular Microbiology* 37: 989-994.
- Firn, R.D., and C.G. Jones. 2003. Natural products - a simple model to explain chemical diversity. *Natural Product Reports* 20: 382-391.
- Grimbs, A., A. Shrestha, A.S.D. Rezk, S. Grimbs, I.H Said, H. Schepker, M.T. Hütt, D.C. Albach, K. Brix, N. Kuhnert, and M.S. Ullrich. 2017. Bioactivity in rhododendron: A systemic analysis of antimicrobial and cytotoxic activities and their phylogenetic and phytochemical origins. *Frontiers in Plant Science* 8: 551.
- Haslam, E. 1986. Secondary Metabolism - Fact and Fiction. *Natural Product Reports* 3: 217-249.
- Jaiswal, R., L. Jayasinghe, and N. Kuhnert. 2012. Identification and characterization of proanthocyanidins of 16 members of the *Rhododendron* genus (Ericaceae) by tandem LC-MS. *Journal of Mass Spectrometry* 47: 502-515.
- Li, Y., Y.B. Liu, J.J. Zhang, Y. Liu, S.G. Ma, J. Qu, H.N. Lu, and S.S. Yu. 2015. Antinociceptive grayanoids from the roots of *Rhododendron molle*. *Journal of Natural Products* 78: 2887-2895.
- Payne, D.J., M.N. Gwynn, D.J. Holmes, and D.L. Pompliano. 2007. Drugs for bad bugs: confronting the challenges of antibacterial discovery. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery* 6: 29-40.
- Popescu, R., and B. Kopp. 2013. The genus *Rhododendron*: An ethnopharmacological and toxicological review. *Journal of Ethnopharmacology* 147: 42-62.
- Rezk, A., A. Al-Hashimi, W. John, H. Schepke, M.S. Ullrich, and K. Brix. 2015b. Assessment of cytotoxicity exerted by leaf extracts from plants of the genus *Rhododendron* towards epidermal keratinocytes and intestine epithelial cells. *BMC Complementary and Alternative Medicine* 15: 364.
- Rezk, A., J. Nolzen, H. Schepker, D.C. Albach, K. Brix, and M.S. Ullrich. 2015a. Phylogenetic spectrum and analysis of antibacterial activities of leaf extracts from plants of the genus *Rhododendron*. *BMC complementary and alternative medicine* 15: 67.
- Said, I.H., A. Rezk, I. Hussain, A. Grimbs, A. Shrestha, H. Schepker, K. Brix, M.S. Ullrich, and N. Kuhnert. 2017. Metabolome comparison of bioactive and inactive *Rhododendron* extracts and identification of an antibacterial cannabinoid(s) from *Rhododendron collettianum*. *Phytochemical Analysis* 28: 454-464.

- Saklani, A., and S.K. Kutty. 2008. Plant-derived compounds in clinical trials. *Drug Discovery Today* 13: 161-171.
- Shrestha, A., I.H. Said, A. Grimbs, N. Thielen, L. Lansing, H. Schepker, and N. Kuhnert. 2017a. Determination of hydroxycinnamic acids present in *Rhododendron* species. *Phytochemistry* 144: 216-225.
- Shrestha, A., A. Rezk, I.H. Said, V. Von Glasenapp, R. Smith, M.S. Ullrich, H. Schepker, and N. Kuhnert. 2017b. Comparison of the polyphenolic profile and anti-bacterial activity of the leaves, fruits and flowers of *Rhododendron ambiguum* and *Rhododendron cinnabarinum*. *BMC Research Notes* 10: 297.
- Silver, L.L. 2011. Challenges of antibacterial discovery. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 24: 71-109.